STELVIO

2018 USER GUIDE

IMPORTANT

Get warranty and other information online – you can review and print or download a copy of documents for your vehicle provided by FCA US LLC by visiting these links. For Owner's Manual and Information and Entertainment System Manual, visit **alfaromeousa.com/owners/owners-service-manual**, and for the limited warranties, visit **alfaromeousa.com/owners/warranty**. Click on the applicable link and follow the instructions to select the applicable year, make and model for your vehicle.

This User Guide is intended to familiarize you with the important features of your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual, Radio Manual and Warranty Booklet can be found by visiting the website on the back cover of your User Guide. We hope you find these resources useful. U.S. residents can purchase replacement kits by visiting **www.techauthority.com** and Canadian residents can purchase replacement kits by calling **1 800 387-1143**.

The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in a collision and personal injury. FCA US LLC strongly recommends that the driver use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their attention off the road. Use of any electrical devices, such as cellular telephones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices, by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous and could lead to a serious collision. Texting while driving is also dangerous and should never be done while the vehicle is moving. If you find yourself unable to devote your full attention to vehicle operation, pull off the road to a safe location and stop your vehicle. Some states or provinces prohibit the use of cellular telephones or texting while driving. It is always the driver's responsibility to comply with all local laws.

If you have any questions about your vehicle or need assistance, please call Alfa Romeo Customer Care at **1 844 253-2872** (U.S.) or **1 800 387-1143** (Canada).

DEAR CUSTOMER

Dear Customer,

We would like to congratulate and thank you for choosing Alfa Romeo.

We have written this User Guide to help you get to know all the features of your vehicle and use it in the best possible way.

Here you will find information, advice, and important warnings regarding vehicle use, and how to achieve the best performance from the technical features of your Alfa Romeo. Please take your time in reading this guide, and familiarize yourself with all the dynamic features of your vehicle.

You are advised to read through the User Guide before taking it on the road for the first time. It is important to become comfortable with the controls of your vehicle, especially with sections concerning the brakes, handling, transmission, and vehicle behavior on different road surfaces.

Additionally, this User Guide provides a description of special features and tips, as well as essential information for the safe driving, care, and maintenance of your Alfa Romeo over time.

In the provided Warranty Booklet, you will also find the description of the services that Alfa Romeo offers to its customers. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty will detail the terms and conditions for maintaining its validity.

After reading through the User Guide, you are advised to keep the User Guide inside the vehicle as an easy reference, and to make sure it remains on board should the vehicle be sold.

We are sure that these will help you to appreciate and get in touch with your new vehicle, as well as the service provided by the people at Alfa Romeo.

Note: This User Guide describes all vehicle models. Optional contents or equipment meant for specific Markets or particular versions are not identified as such in the text: you need to consider only the information related to the version you own. Any content introduced throughout the production of the model, outside the specific request of options at the time of purchase, will be identified with the wording *(if equipped)*. All data contained in this User Guide is intended to help you use your vehicle in the best possible way. FCA US LLC aims at a constant improvement of the vehicles produced. For this reason, it reserves the right to make changes to the model described for technical and/or commercial reasons. For further information, contact your authorized dealer.

For questions or comments pertaining to your vehicle, please contact the Alfa Romeo Customer Care Center:

P.O. Box 21–8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004

Phone: 1-844-Alfa-USA (1-844-253-2872)

READ THIS CAREFULLY

Refueling

Do not use fuel containing methanol or ethanol E85. Using these mixtures may cause misfiring and driving issues, as well as damage vital components of the supply system.
For further details on the use of the correct fuel, refer to "Fuel Requirements" in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

Starting The Engine

Make sure that the electric park brake is engaged and that the transmission is in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Next, press the brake pedal, and then push the engine START/STOP button.

Parking On Flammable Material

The catalytic converter develops high temperatures during operation. Do not park the vehicle on grass, dry leaves, pine needles or other flammable material, as doing so is a fire hazard.

Respecting The Environment

The vehicle is fitted with a system that carries out a continuous diagnosis of the emission-related components in order to help protect the environment.

Electrical Accessories

If you decide to add electrical accessories after purchasing the vehicle, (with the risk of gradually draining the battery), contact your authorized dealer. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement and check that the vehicle's electric system can support the required load.

Scheduled Servicing

Correctly performed maintenance procedures are essential for ensuring that your vehicle continuously maintains its quality in performance and safety features, environmental friendliness, and low running costs.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Operating Instructions

Each time an instruction is given that concerns direction (left/right or forward/backward), it is written to be read from the perspective of an occupant in the driver's seat. If a direction is written from a different perspective, it will be specified as such in the text as appropriate.

The figures in the manual are only examples: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle.

To identify the chapter with the information necessary, you can consult the index at the end of this manual.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, located at the side of each odd page. There is also a key for getting to know the chapter order and the relevant symbols in the tabs. Additionally, there is a textual indication of each current chapter at the side of each even page.

Warnings And Cautions

While reading this User Guide you will find a series of **WARNINGS** that must be carefully followed to prevent incorrect use of the components of the vehicle, which could cause accidents or injuries.

There are also **CAUTIONS** to prevent procedures that could damage your vehicle.

Therefore all **WARNINGS** and **CAUTIONS** must always be carefully followed.

WARNINGS and **CAUTIONS** are recalled in the text with the following symbols:

Personal Safety:

Vehicle Safety:

Note:

This User Guide describes all vehicle models. Optional equipment meant for specific markets or particular models are not identified as such in the text: you need to consider only the information related to the model you own. Any content introduced throughout the production of the model, outside the specific request of options at the time of purchase, will be identified by the indicator: — if equipped.

The data contained in this publication is intended to help you use your vehicle in the best possible way. FCA US LLC aims for constant improvement of the vehicles produced. For this reason, it reserves the right to make changes to the model described for technical and/or commercial reasons.

For further information, contact your authorized dealer.

Symbols

Some vehicle components have colored labels with symbols indicating precautions to be observed when using this component. It is important to follow all warnings when operating your vehicle. See below for a brief description of each symbol.

READ THE OWNER HANDBOOK

DO NOT TOUCH WITH HANDS

COMPONENT CAN START AUTOMATICALLY ALSO WHEN ENGINE IS OFF

PROTECT YOUR EYES

DO NOT OPEN THE CAP WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT

DO NOT OPEN: HIGH PRESSURE GAS

KEEP CHILDREN AT A DISTANCE

BURSTING

MOVING PARTS KEEP PARTS OF YOUR BODY AND CLOTHES AWAY

DO NOT APPROACH FLAMES

CORROSIVE LIQUID

HIGH VOLTAGE

VEHICLE CHANGES / ALTERATIONS

Note:

❒ Any change or alteration of the vehicle might seriously affect its safety and road holding, which could cause accidents resulting in fatal injury.

❒ The use of these devices inside the passenger compartment (without an external antenna) may cause the electrical systems to malfunction. This could compromise the safety of the vehicle, in addition to constituting a potential hazard for passengers' health.

❒ If mobile phones/laptops/smartphones/tablets are inside the car and/or close to the electronic key, a reduced performance of the Passive Entry/Keyless Start system may occur.

This page is intentionally left blank

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

SAFETY

STARTING AND OPERATING

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

MULTIMEDIA

CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

INDEX

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

In this section, you will find important information to help you become familiar with the features needed to operate your vehicle, and how they function.

KEYS 10
IGNITION SYSTEM 11
SECURITY ALARM SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED 12
DOORS 13
SEATS 18
HEAD RESTRAINTS 21
STEERING WHEEL 23
MIRRORS 25
EXTERIOR LIGHTS 26
INTERIOR LIGHTS 29
WINDSHIELD WIPERS 30
CLIMATE CONTROL 31
POWER WINDOWS 33
POWER SUNROOF — IF EQUIPPED . .34
HOOD 36
POWER LIFTGATE 37
INTERNAL EQUIPMENT 39

KEYS

Key Fob

Your vehicle uses a keyless ignition system. This system includes a key fob and a keyless push button ignition.

The Remote Keyless Entry key fob allows you to lock or unlock the doors and liftgate or activate the Panic Alarm from a distance. The key fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

Key Fob

PANIC Function

The key fob contains a PANIC button. Should you ever feel threatened, push this button and the vehicle security alarm will sound.

To activate the PANIC function, push and hold the PANIC button for at least one second. When the panic alarm is active, the headlights turn on, the turn signals flash, the horn honks intermittently, and all interior adjustable lights turn on. The panic alarm will remain active for three minutes, and can be deactivated:

❒ By pushing the PANIC button again.

❒ Automatically if the vehicle speed exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h).

In both cases, the panic alarm is immediately deactivated.

Warning!

❒ *Before exiting a vehicle, always shift the automatic transmission into PARK, apply the parking brake, turn the engine OFF, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle.*

❒ *Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.*

❒ *Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.*

❒ *Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.*

❒ *Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.*

Request For Additional Keys

If you need a replacement key fob, contact your authorized dealer.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IGNITION SYSTEM

Operation

To activate the keyless ignition, the key fob must be inside the vehicle.

Keyless Ignition START/STOP Button

The keyless ignition has the following modes:

❒ STOP: engine off, steering locked. Some electrical devices (e.g. central door locking system, alarm, etc.) are still available.

❒ ON: all electrical devices are available. This state can be entered by pushing the ignition button once, without pressing the brake pedal.

❒ AVV: engine starting. This state can be entered by pushing the ignition button once while pressing the brake pedal.

Note:

❒ With the keyless ignition in the ON position: if 30 minutes pass with the gear selector in P (Park) and the engine stopped, the keyless ignition will automatically reset to the STOP position.

❒ With the engine started, it is possible to remove the key fob from the vehicle. The engine will remain running and the instrument cluster will indicate the absence of the key fob when the door is closed.

For more information on engine start-up, refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating."

Warning!

❒ Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

❒ When exiting the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock your vehicle.

❒ Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.

❒ Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition in the AVV or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

❒ Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.

❒ Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave the transmission in PARK. Failure to do so may allow the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.

❒ Driving the vehicle with the parking brake engaged, or repeated use of the parking brake to slow the vehicle may cause serious damage to the brake system.

Caution!

If the Brake System Warning Light remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

Starting With A Discharged Key Fob Battery

If the key fob battery is discharged, proceed as follows to start the vehicle:

1. Lift the front armrest.

2. Lay the key fob on the key fob outline found on the floor of the armrest compartment while pushing the START/STOP button to start the ignition.

Key Fob Placement Location

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

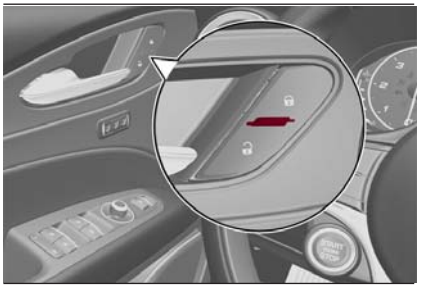
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

SECURITY ALARM SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

To Arm The Alarm

With the doors, hood, and liftgate closed and the keyless ignition system placed in the STOP position, push and release the lock button on the key fob. The alarm can also be armed by pushing the Passive Entry door handle button, located on the exterior door handle. Refer to "Doors" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.

When the alarm is armed, the warning lights on the door handle trim remain on.



Lock/Unlock Switches

To Disarm The Alarm

Push the unlock button on the key fob to disarm the alarm. While disarming, the following operations are performed:

❒ Two brief flashes of the turn signals (if programmed).

❒ Two brief acoustic signals (if programmed).

❒ Doors are unlocked.

Anti-Lift Protection — If Equipped

The vehicle security alarm system monitors the doors and liftgate for unauthorized entry and the ignition switch for unauthorized operation.

To ensure the correct operation of the protection, completely close the side windows. If a perimeter violation triggers the security system, the alarm will sound and the exterior lights will flash.

To ensure the correct operation of the Volumetric/Anti-Lift Protection system, completely close the side windows.

To disable the function, push the Volumetric/Anti-Lift Protection button before activating the alarm.

Volumetric/Anti-Lift Protection Button

When the function is disabled, this is indicated by the light on the Volumetric/Anti-Lift Protection button flashing for several seconds.

Any disabling of the Volumetric/Anti-Lift Protection must be repeated each time the ignition is cycled off.

To Disarm The Alarm Using Passive Entry

To completely deactivate the alarm (e.g. during a long period of vehicle inactivity), insert the blade of the emergency key, found inside the key fob, into the door handle lock cylinder and turn the emergency key to the right (clockwise) to lock the door(s).

DOORS

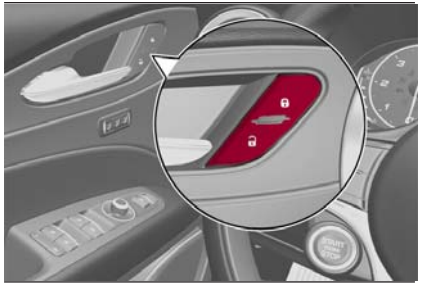
Locking And Unlocking Doors From The Inside

If all doors are closed properly, they will automatically lock once the vehicle has exceeded approximately 12 MPH (20 km/h) ("Auto Relock" function active).

Push the interior lock button on the driver or passenger side door panel trim to lock the doors.

Push the interior lock button on the rear door panel trim to lock the rear doors only.

With doors locked, push the unlock button on the interior trim panel to unlock the doors.



Door Lock And Unlock Switch Panel

Warning!

❒ *Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.*

❒ *For personal security and safety in the event of a collision, lock the vehicle doors as you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.*

❒ *Before exiting a vehicle, always shift the automatic transmission into PARK, apply the parking brake, turn the engine OFF, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle.*

❒ *Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.*

❒ *Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.*

❒ *Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.*

Caution!

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation. Always remove the key from the ignition and lock all of the doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Locking/Unlocking Doors From The Outside

When locking the doors from the outside with the doors closed, push the lock button on the key fob.

The door lock can be activated with all doors locked and the liftgate open. When the lock button on the key fob is pushed, all locks are activated, including the liftgate if it is open. The liftgate will be locked when it is closed.

When unlocking the doors from the outside, push the unlock button on the key fob.

Locking/Unlocking Doors From The Outside In An Emergency

If the battery is discharged or the key fob is inoperable, you can lock or unlock the doors from the outside by inserting the blade of the emergency key, found inside the key fob, into the door handle lock cylinder and turn the emergency key as follows.

❒ Lock — Turn the emergency key to the right (clockwise)

❒ Unlock — Turn the emergency key to the left (counter clockwise)

Passive Entry

The Passive Entry system can identify the presence of a key fob near the doors and liftgate.

The system enables the doors and liftgate to be locked or unlocked without pushing any button on the key fob.

The key fob is detected only after the system recognizes the presence of a hand on one of the front door handles. If the detected key fob is valid, the doors and the liftgate are unlocked (refer to the Information and Entertainment System Owner's Manual Supplement for Passive Entry Settings)

Note:

The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle keyless-go system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the keyless-go system from starting the vehicle.

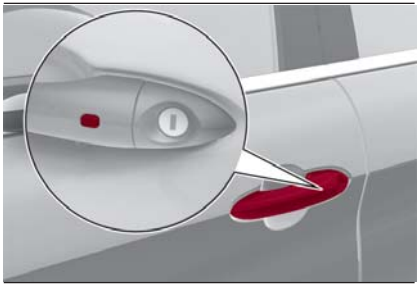
Grasping the handle of the driver's door unlocks the driver's side door, or all doors depending on the mode set using the Information and Entertainment System (refer to the Information and Entertainment System Owner's Manual Supplement for Passive Entry Settings).

Door Locking

To lock the doors, proceed as follows:

1. Make sure that you have the key fob and are close to the driver or passenger side door handle.

2. Push the Passive Entry door handle button or the Passive Entry liftgate button, located next to the external liftgate release button. This will lock all doors and the liftgate. Door locking will activate the alarm as well.



Passive Entry Door Handle Button

Passive Entry Liftgate Button

Note:

After pushing the Passive Entry door handle button, you must wait two seconds before the doors can be unlocked again using the passive entry door handle button. This feature makes it possible to check whether the vehicle has been locked correctly by pulling the door handle within two seconds. The doors will not be unlocked again.

The vehicle doors and liftgate can be locked by pushing the lock button on the key fob or on the interior door panel.

Driver Side Door Emergency Opening

If the key fob does not work, e.g. because its battery is discharged or the vehicle battery is discharged, the emergency key inside the key fob can be used to unlock the driver side door.

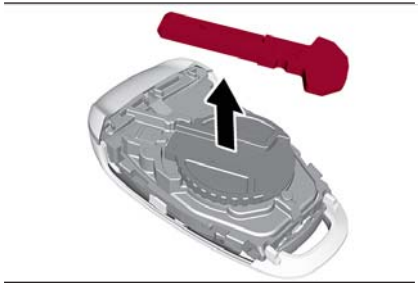
To remove the emergency key, proceed as follows:

1. Push the sides of the key fob inward and extract the cover pulling downwards.

2. Remove the emergency key from the key fob housing.

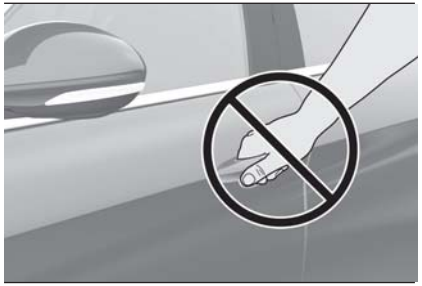
3. Insert the emergency key in the driver side door lock cylinder and turn it to the left (counter clockwise) to unlock the door.

Key Fob Cover Removal



Removing Emergency Key

Do not push the door lock/unlock button and pull the handle at the same time.



Do Not Grab The Door Handle When Locking

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Power Lock

The power lock is a safety device that prevents the operation of the interior door handles and the door lock and unlock buttons. The power lock also prevent opening of the doors from inside the passenger compartment.

It is recommended to lock the vehicle doors each time the vehicle is parked.

Activating The Power Lock

The power lock is enabled on all the doors by quickly pushing the lock button on the key fob twice.

The turn signals will flash to let you know that the power lock is active.

If one or more of the doors are not closed correctly, the power lock will not activate, preventing a person from getting stuck inside the passenger compartment by entering the vehicle, and then closing, the open door.

Deactivating The Power Lock

The power lock disengages automatically:

❒ When the doors are unlocked, pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

❒ When the keyless ignition is placed in the ON position.

Child Safety Locks

To provide a safer environment for small children riding in the rear seats, the rear doors are equipped with a Child-Protection Door Lock system.

This device can only be engaged with the doors open.

Child Safety Lock Positions

❒ Lock position: device locked (door opened from exterior only)

❒ Unlock position: device unlocked (door may be opened from the inside)

The Child Safety Locks remain locked even if the doors are unlocked.

Note:

The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when the Child Safety Lock is engaged.

Unlocking The Doors With A Discharged Battery

Proceed as follows to unlock the doors if the vehicle battery is discharged.

1. With the doors unlocked insert the emergency key from the key fob into the door lock manual release lock cylinder.

Door Lock Manual Release Lock Cylinder

2. Turn the manual release lock cylinder clockwise for the right door locks or counterclockwise for the left door locks.

3. Remove the key/screwdriver from the manual release lock.

Proceed as follows to realign the door lock device (only when the battery charge has been restored):

❒ Push the lock button on the electronic key

❒ Push the unlock button on the door panel

❒ Unlock driver's door lock with the emergency key

❒ Operate the internal door handle

Note:

For the rear doors, if the Child Safety Locks are engaged, and the previously described locking procedure is carried out, operating the internal handle will not open the door. Instead, it will only realign the lock release device. To open the door, the outside handle must be used. The door central locking/unlocking buttons are not deactivated when the emergency lock is engaged.

SEATS

The front seats can be adjusted to ensure maximum comfort for the occupants. When adjusting the driver's seat, keep the shoulders resting firmly against the backrest, the wrists within reach of the top of the steering wheel, and the seat close enough to allow the driver to fully depress the brake pedal.

Warning!

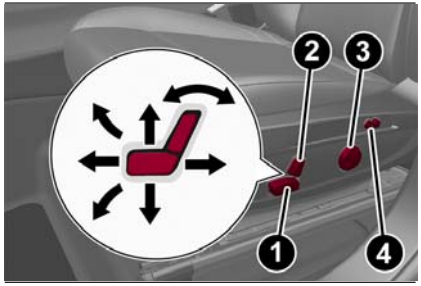
❒ *It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.*

❒ *Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.*

❒ *Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.*

Power Front Seats

On models equipped with power seats, the switch is located on the outboard side of the seat near the floor. Use this switch to move the driver's seat up, down, forward, and rearward, or to recline the seatback.



Power Seat Adjustment

1 — Seat Switch (Forward/Rearward/Height)
2 — Seatback Switch
3 — Lumbar Adjustment
4 — Power Adjustable Bolster Buttons — If Equipped

Caution!

Do not place any article under a power seat or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the seat controls. Seat travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the seat's path.

Forward/Rearward Adjustment

Push the seat switch forward or rearward to adjust to your desired position.

Seatback Recline

The angle of the seatback can be adjusted forward or rearward. Push the seatback switch forward or rearward, and the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

Power Lumbar — If Equipped

Vehicles equipped with power driver or passenger seats may also be equipped with power lumbar. The power lumbar switch is located on the outboard side of the power seat. Push the switch forward or rearward to increase or decrease the lumbar support. Push the switch upward or downward to raise or lower the lumbar support.

Height Adjustment

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the seat switch, and the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

Seat Angle Adjustment (Tilting) — If Equipped

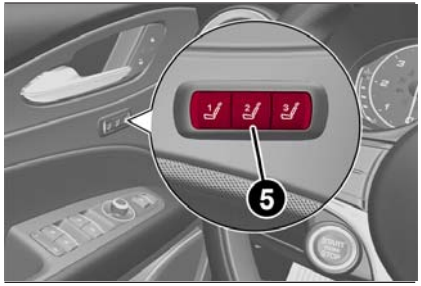
The seat angle can be adjusted in four directions. Lift or push the front part of seat switch to move the front part of the seat in the corresponding direction. Release the seat switch when the seat has reached the desired position.

Power Bolster Adjustment — If Equipped

Push the power bolster adjustment buttons to regulate the width of the backrest through the lateral padding.

Driver Memory Seat

The driver memory seat buttons allow the driver to store and recall three different driver's seat positions, as well as outside power mirror positions. Storing and recalling can be done with the ignition in the ON mode and the driver's side door closed, or for 3 minutes after having opened the driver's side door. To set a memory profile, first adjust your seat (and power mirror position if desired). Then, push the memory button you want to assign the set position to for 1.5 seconds. To recall a memorized position, push the assigned button briefly.



Driver Memory Seat Buttons Location

5 — Driver Memory Seat Buttons

Warning!

❒ *Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.*

❒ *Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.*

❒ *Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.*

Heated Seats — If Equipped

With the engine in the ON position, push the heated seat buttons on the instrument panel.

Heated Seat Buttons

You can select three heating levels:

❒ Maximum — three orange indicators illuminated on the buttons

❒ Average — two orange indicators illuminated on the buttons

❒ Minimum — one orange indicator illuminated on the buttons

After selecting a heating level, heat will be felt within a few minutes.

A quick push of the heated seat button will select the heat levels in order of highest to lowest. A fourth push of the button will turn the heated seat off.

The "minimum" setting is automatically deactivated once a certain period of time has elapsed. This varies on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the specific operating conditions.

Note:

To preserve the battery charge, this function cannot be activated when the engine is OFF.

Warning!

❒ *Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time*

❒ *Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.*

Rear Seats

The rear seats allow for three passengers.

The seats and the seat belts are considered components of the vehicle's Occupant Restraint System.

Note:

Refer to the "Seat Belt Systems" in the "Safety" chapter for the proper positioning of the seat belts.

Split Folding Rear Seat

Partial Extension Of The Luggage Compartment (40/20/40)

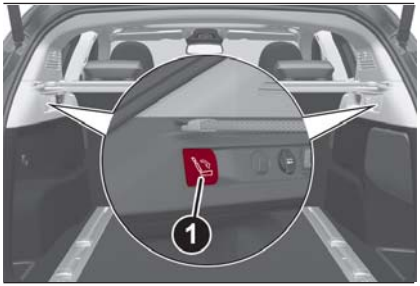
Extending the right side of the luggage compartment allows you to carry two passengers on the left part of the rear seat, while extending the left side allows you to carry one passenger.

Proceed as follows:

1. Completely lower the rear seat head restraints.

2. Place the seatbelt so that it doesn't impede the movement of the backrest while tilting it.

3. Pull the left-hand seat back release lever (inside the luggage compartment or the release at the base of the rear seat accessible from the rear doors) to fold down the left side, or the right-hand seat back release lever to fold down the right side of the backrest. It will fold forward automatically. If necessary, assist the backrest during the initial stage of tilting.



Seat Back Release Lever In Luggage Compartment

1 — Seat Back Release Lever

It is also possible to disengage the sections of the rear seat from inside the luggage compartment or by using one of the two levers located below the rear seat. Each lever folds down the section of the backrest on the same side.

Seat Back Release Lever Below Rear Seat

Repositioning The Backrests

Move the seat belts to the side, making sure that they are correctly extended and not twisted. Also make sure that they are not caught on anything behind the backrests of the seats. Then, lift the backrests by pushing them rearward until you hear the lock click into place on both attachment mechanisms.

Warning!

Be certain that the seatback is securely locked into position. If the seatback is not securely locked into position the seat will not provide the proper stability for child seats and/or passengers. An improperly latched seat could cause serious injury.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

Warning!

❒ *A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.*

❒ *ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.*

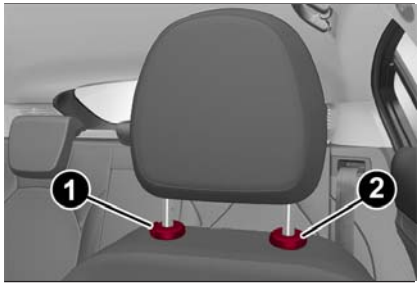
❒ *Do not place items over the top of the Reactive Head Restraint, such as coats, seat covers or portable DVD players. These items may interfere with the operation of the Reactive Head Restraint in the event of a collision and could result in serious injury or death.*

Front Head Restraints (Adjustments)

The front head restraints may be height-adjustable. To adjust them, operate as follows:

❒ Upward adjustment: Pull upward on the head restraint until it clicks into place.

❒ Downward adjustment: Push the adjustment button and lower the head restraint at the same time.



Front Head Restraint

1 — Release Button
2 — Adjustment Button

Warning!

❒ *All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.*

❒ *Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.*

Note:

To allow for maximum visibility for the driver, if a seat is not occupied by a passenger, the head restraint can be lowered to the fully lowered position.

Rear Head Restraints (Adjustments)

Warning!

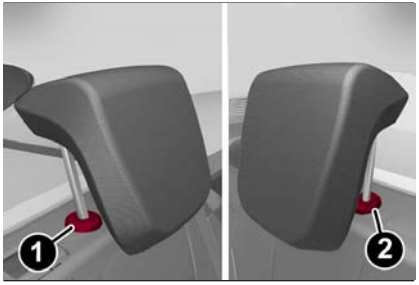
❒ *All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.*

❒ *Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.*

The height of the outboard head restraints can be adjusted. The head restraint of the center seat, if equipped, cannot be adjusted, only removed.

For upward adjustment, pull upward on the head restraint until it clicks into place.

For downward adjustment, push in the adjustment button and lower the head restraint at the same time to the desired height.



Rear Head Restraint

1 — Release Button
2 — Adjustment Button

Note:

To allow for maximum visibility for the driver, if a seat is not occupied by a passenger, the head restraint should be lowered to the fully lowered position.

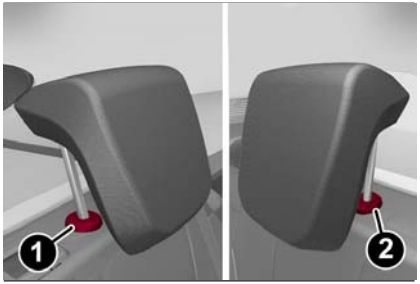
Head Restraints (Removal)

To remove the head restraints, proceed as follows:

1. Raise the head restraints to their maximum height.

2. Push the adjustment button and the release button at the side of the two supports at the same time.

3. Pull upward on the head restraint to fully remove it.



Rear Head Restraint

1 — Adjustment Button
2 — Release Button

To reinstall the head restraints, proceed as follows:

1. Hold down both the adjustment button and release button while placing the head restraint post into the holes.

2. Then, reposition the head restraint to the appropriate height for the passengers.

Warning!

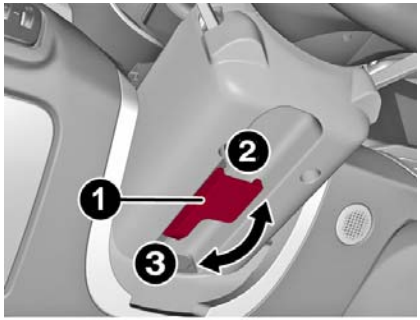
❒ *A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.*

❒ *ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.*

STEERING WHEEL

Steering Wheel Adjustments

The steering column is able to be tilted upward or downward. It also allows you to lengthen or shorten the steering column. The tilt/telescoping lever is located below the steering wheel at the end of the steering column.



Steering Wheel Adjustment

1 — Tilt/Telescoping Control Handle
2 — Closed
3 — Open
4 — Tilt Movement
5 — Telescoping Movement

Warning!

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

To Adjust The Position:

1. Pull the Tilt/Telescoping Control Handle down to the open position.

2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

3. Lock the desired position by pushing the Tilt/Telescoping Control Handle to the closed position.

Warning!

It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could adversely affect performance. Doing so could void the New Vehicle Limited Warrant, cause SERIOUS SAFETY PROBLEMS INCLUDING INJURY, and also result in the vehicle not meeting type-approval requirements.

Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped

With the ignition in the ON position, push the heated steering wheel button on the instrument panel.

Heated Steering Wheel Button

The indicator on the button will illuminate when this feature is enabled.

Warning!

❒ *Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.*

❒ *Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.*

MIRRORS

Electrochromic Mirror

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

The electrochromic mirror has a power button to activate/deactivate the automatic dimming/anti-glare function.

Electrochromic Mirror Power Button

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the automatic dimming feature is deactivated.

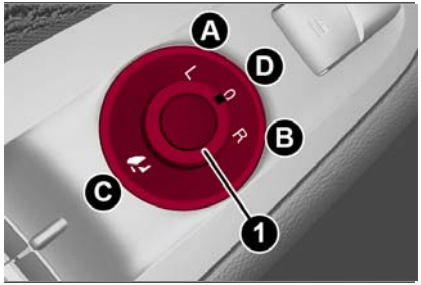
Exterior Power Mirrors

Power Adjustment

The power mirrors can be adjusted with the ignition ON .

Select the desired mirror by rotating the power mirror control knob to the left (L) or right (R) position.

To adjust the selected mirror, push the knob in the direction desired.



Power Mirror Control

1 — Power Mirror Control Knob
A — Left
B — Right
C — Power Folding Position
D — Neutral

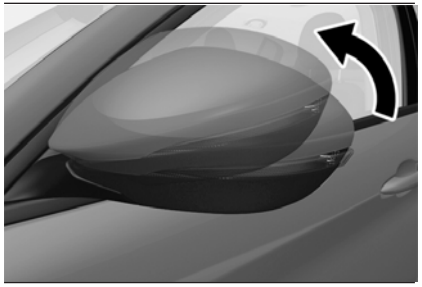
Note:

Once adjustment is complete, rotate the knob to the neutral position to prevent accidental movements.

Power Folding

With the power mirror control knob in the neutral position, rotate it to the power folding position. Rotate the knob back to the neutral position to return the mirrors to the driving position.

If the power mirror control knob is moved again during door mirror folding (from closed to open position and vice versa), the movement direction is reversed.



Folding Mirror

Automatic Activation

Activating the central door locking system from outside the vehicle automatically folds the mirrors. The mirrors return to the driving position when the ignition is cycled to the ON position.

If the door mirrors were folded using the power mirror control knob, they can only be returned to the driving position by rotating the knob again.

Automatic Dimming Mirrors — If Equipped

Like the electrochromic mirror, an automatic dimming feature is also available on the outside rear view mirrors to prevent glare. The automatic dimming button for these mirrors is the same as the electrochromic mirror.

Warning!

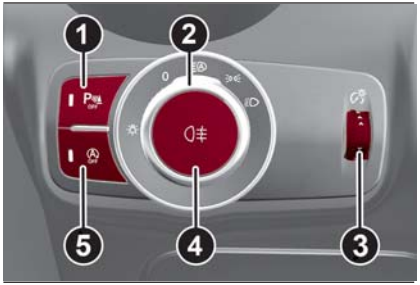
Vehicles and other objects seen in an outside convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on side convex mirrors could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in a side convex mirror.

EXTERIOR LIGHTS

Headlight Switch

The headlight switch is located to the left of the steering wheel on the instrument panel. This switch controls the operation of the headlights, parking lights, instrument panel lights, instrument panel light dimming, interior lights and rear fog lights.

In addition, there are buttons for parking sensors deactivation and stop/start. Refer to "Starting And Operating" for further information.



Headlight Switch

1 — Parking Sensors Deactivation Button
2 — Parking Light, Daylight Running Lights, Headlight Switch
3 — Instrument Panel Dimmer
4 — Rear Fog Light Button
5 — Stop/Start Button

The exterior lights can be activated only when the ignition is in the ON mode, except for the parking lights. Refer to "Parking Lights" in this section for more information.

The instrument panel and the various controls on the dashboard will be illuminated when the exterior lights are turned on.

Automatic Headlights

This system automatically turns the headlights on or off according to ambient light levels.

Function Activation

From the 0 (off) position, rotate the light switch to the (auto) position.

Note:

The function can only operate with the ignition position cycled to ON.

Function Deactivation

To deactivate the function, rotate the light switch to a position other than the (auto) position.

Daytime Running Lights (DRL)

With the ignition cycled to ON, and the light switch turned to the position, if the dusk sensor detects sufficient external light, the Daytime Running Lights will turn on automatically while the other lights remain off.

If the turn signals are operated, the brightness of the corresponding Daytime Running Lights will be decreased for as long as the turn signals are on.

If equipped, the DRL can be activated/deactivated from the Information and Entertainment System, by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main MENU:

1. "Settings."
2. "Lights."
3. "Daytime Lights."

Note: The Daytime Running Lights **cannot** be deactivated in Canadian markets.

Rear Fog Lights

The rear fog light switch is located within the headlight switch.

Push the button, located in the center of the headlight switch, to turn the rear fog lights on/off.

The rear fog lights turn on only when the headlights or parking lights are also turned on. The lights can be turned off by pushing the button again or by turning the headlight switch to the 0 (off) position.

When the engine is stopped with the rear fog lights on, they will be off the next time the engine is started.

Parking Lights

With the ignition in STOP mode, rotate the headlight switch to the position to turn the parking lights on. All of the parking lights will turn on for eight minutes, and opening the door activates an audible warning.

To leave only the lights on one side (right/left) illuminated, you must move the multifunction lever (located on the left side of the steering wheel) to the side that you want to remain on. With the parking lights on, the warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate.

Note:

Cycling the ignition to ON mode turns off the parking lights, which were only illuminated on one side.

Headlight Off Delay

The "Headlight Off Delay" function delays the turning off of the headlights after the vehicle's engine has been stopped.

The function can be activated from the Information and Entertainment System by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu:

1. "Settings."
2. "Lights."
3. "Headlight Off Delay."

The side lights and the headlights stay on for a time that can be set between 30, 60, and 90 seconds.

Function Activation

With the headlights on, cycle the ignition to STOP mode and the timer will start.

Note:

To activate this function, the headlights must be deactivated within two minutes after the ignition has been cycled to the STOP mode.

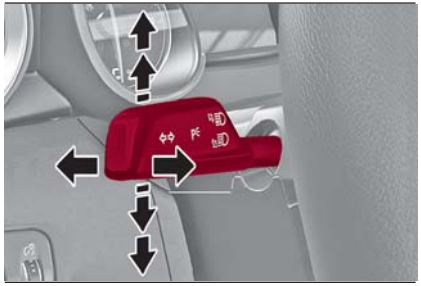
Function Deactivation

This function is deactivated by turning on the headlights, the side lights, or by cycling the ignition to ON mode.

High Beam Headlights

To activate the fixed high beam headlights, push the multifunction lever, located on the left side of the steering wheel, towards the instrument panel. The headlight switch must first be turned to the (auto) or (on) position.

With high beam headlights on, the High Beam Indicator on the instrument panel will illuminate.



Multifunction Lever

The high beam headlights are turned off by pulling the lever rearward to its original position. The High Beam Indicator will turn off in the instrument panel when the headlights are turned off.

Flashing The Headlights

Pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel will activate the high beam headlights manually. The lights will remain on as long as the lever is held. Once the lever is released, the lights will resume the previous setting.

Automatic High Beam Headlights — If Equipped

The Automatic High Beam Headlights system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted on the windshield. This camera detects vehicle specific light, and automatically turns the headlights from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

This function is enabled with the Information and Entertainment System, and can only be activated with the light switch turned to the (auto) position.

The first time that the high beam headlights are activated, the Automatic High Beam Headlights system will activate as well, and the warning light or the AUTO symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel.

If the high beam headlights are on, the blue icon/warning light will illuminate in the instrument panel.

Turn Signals

To activate the turn signals, move the multifunction lever, located on the left side of the steering wheel, up or down until it reaches the detent. Moving the lever upward flashes the right turn signal and moving the lever downward will flash the left turn signal.

The ⇨ or ⇦ turn signal will blink on the instrument panel.

"Lane Change" Function

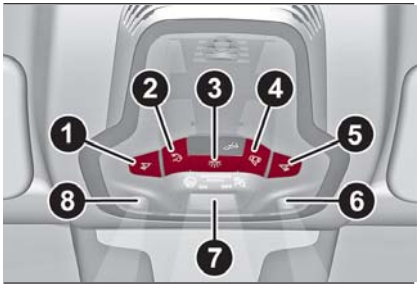
Tap the lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash five times. Then, the turn signal (right or left) will automatically turn off.

To turn off the flashing before the end of the cycle, move the lever in the opposite direction until the first click (about half way).

INTERIOR LIGHTS

Front Map Reading Lights

The front map/reading and overhead lights are mounted in the overhead console. Each light can be turned on by pushing the corresponding switch on the console. These switches are backlit for night time visibility. To turn the lights off, push the switch a second time.



Overhead Console

1 — Driver's Reading/Map Light Switch
2 — Rear Overhead Lights Switch
3 — Overhead Lights Switch
4 — Front Map Reading Lights Switch
5 — Passenger's Reading/Map Light Switch
6 — Passenger's Reading/Map Light
7 — Center Reading/Map Light
8 — Driver's Reading/Map Light

Note:

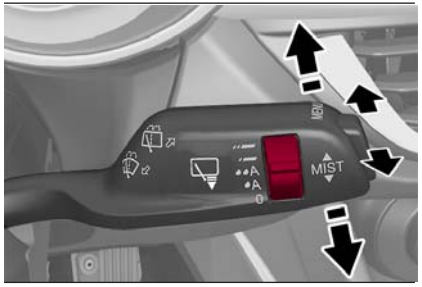
Before exiting the vehicle, ensure that the overhead lights are off. This will prevent the battery from discharging once the doors are closed. If a light is left on accidently, the overhead lights turn off automatically approximately 15 minutes after the engine has been cycled OFF.

Overhead Light Timing

On certain models, to assist getting in and out of the vehicle at night or in poorly-lit areas, two timed modes have been provided.

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Windshield Wiper/Washers



Windshield Wiper Switch

Operation: The switch on the wiper stalk can be set to the following positions:

0 Windshield Wiper Off.

A Low Sensitivity Rain Sensing.

A High Sensitivity Rain Sensing.

Low Continuous Wiper Speed.

High Continuous Wiper Speed.

Windshield Washer Operation

Pull the stalk toward the steering wheel to operate the windshield washer.

Keep the stalk pulled to activate both the windshield washer jet and the windshield wiper with a single movement. The wipers and washers will continue to operate until stalk is released.

The windshield wiper stops working three strokes after the stalk is released, followed by a final stroke six seconds later to complete the cycle.

Mist

Use this feature when weather conditions make occasional usage of the wipers necessary. Push the stalk upward to the MIST position and release for a single wiping cycle. This function is useful to remove small deposits of dust from the windshield or morning dew.

Note:

This function does not activate the windshield washer. To spray windshield washer fluid onto the windshield, the washing function must be used.

Warning!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

Rain Sensor

The Rain Sensor feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or over spray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead.

Activation/Deactivation

Rotating the wiper switch to position A or A activates the rain sensor.

The activation of the rain sensor system is done by tapping the wiper stalk upwards while the switch is in the A or A position.

To deactivate the system, use the wiper switch or cycle the ignition to STOP mode.

If the ignition is cycled to STOP mode, and the wiper switch is left in the A or A position, no wiping cycle will occur even if it rains when the vehicle is next started (ignition in ON mode).

Rear Window Wiper/Washer

Shifting the vehicle into REVERSE with the windshield wiper operating, activates a single cycle of the rear window wiper.

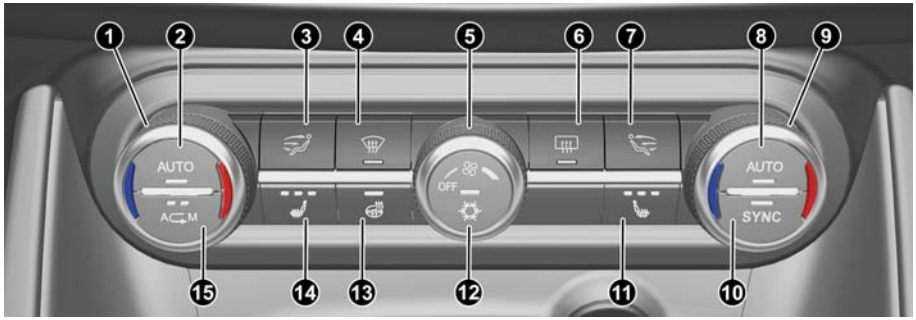
Activation of the rear window wiper/washer can be done by moving the stalk to one of the following positions:

❒ Pushing the stalk towards the instrument panel activates the rear window washer (a brief push activates one washing cycle, keeping the stalk pushed washes continuously until the stalk is released).

❒ Pushing the stalk downward activates/deactivates continuous rear wiper operation.

Automatic Dual-Zone Climate Control System

Controls



Automatic Climate Control System

1 — Driver Temperature Adjustment Knob

2 — Driver Side AUTO Button (Automatic Operation)

3 — Driver Side Air Distribution Selection Button

4 — Max Defrost Button

5 — Blower Speed Adjustment Knob

6 — Rear Defrost Button

7 — Passenger Side Air Distribution Selection Button

8 — Passenger Side AUTO Button (Automatic Operation)

9 — Passenger Temperature Adjustment Knob

10 — SYNC Button (Set Temperature Alignment) Driver/Passenger Side

11 — Passenger Heated Seat Button — If Equipped

12 — Air Conditioning Button

13 — Steering Wheel Heater Button — If Equipped

14 — Driver Side Heated Seat Button — If Equipped

15 — Air Recirculation Button

Caution!

The system uses R1234yf refrigerant, which does not pollute the environment in the event of accidental leakage. Under no circumstances, use R134a and R12 fluids, which are incompatible with the components of this system.

Air Distribution Selection

Push the Air Distribution Selection button on the faceplate to change the mode of air distribution. The follow selectable option are explained below:

- Air flow to the windshield and demister window vents to demist/defrost them.
- Air flow at the central and side dashboard vents to ventilate the chest and the face.
- Air flow to the front and rear floor vents. This setting heats the passenger compartment the quickest.
- Air flow distributed between the floor vents (hotter air) and the central and side dashboard vents (cooler air). This air distribution setting is useful on sunny days during spring and autumn.
- Air flow distributed between the floor vents, windshield, and front side window defrosting/demisting vents. This distribution setting warms the passenger compartment while preventing the windows from fogging up.
- Air flow distribution between the windshield demisting/defrosting vents, and side/central dashboard vents. This distribution setting sends air to the windshield in sunny conditions.
- Air flow distribution to all vents on the vehicle.

In AUTO mode, the Climate Controls automatically manage the air distribution. When set manually, the respective symbols on the Information and Entertainment System indicate the air distribution setting.

Stop/Start

The Stop/Start system shuts off the engine when vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h), and the climate control system will continue to maintain comfort within the vehicle.

Stop/Start will deactivate in the following scenarios:

❒ The climate control system is in AUTO mode (indicator illuminated), and the vehicle has yet to reach the set temperature

❒ The climate control system is in LO maximum cooling

❒ The climate control system is in HI maximum heating

❒ The climate control system is in the MAX-DEF status

When the Stop/Start system is active, the engine will restart if the inside temperature changes significantly, or if the LO setting, or MAX-DEF setting, is activated.

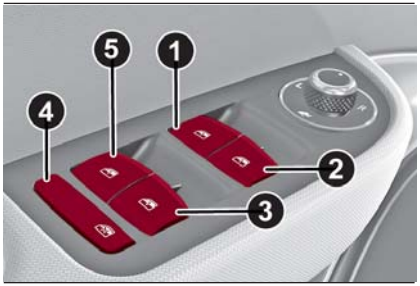
POWER WINDOWS

Power Window Switches

The power window switches work with the ignition in the ON position and for three minutes after the ignition has been placed in the STOP position. When one of the front doors is opened, this operation is disabled.

Driver Side Front Door Controls

The switches are located on the door panel trim. All windows can be controlled from the driver side door panel.



Power Window Switches

1 — Front Left Window Switch	4 — Window Lockout Switch
2 — Front Right Window Switch	5 — Rear Left Window Switch
3 — Rear Right Window Switch	

Window Opening

Push the window switch to the first detent once to move the window downward. Push the window to the second detent, and the window will go down automatically.

To Stop the window during Auto-DOWN operation, pull the window switch.

Window Closing

Pull the window to the first detent to move the window upward. Pull the window to the second detent, and the window will go up automatically.

To Stop the window during Auto-UP operation, push the window switch.

Passenger Side Front Door/Rear Door Controls

There are single window controls on the passenger and rear door trim panels which operate the door windows.

Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection

The vehicle may be equipped with an anti-pinch safety device for closing the windows.

If the safety system senses any obstacle while the window is closing, it will stop the window's movement and reverse it, depending on its position.

This device is also useful if the windows are activated accidentally by children on board the vehicle.

The anti-pinch safety function is activated both during the manual and the automatic operation of the window.

When the anti-pinch system is activated, the window closing is immediately interrupted. Then the window closing is automatically reversed and the window lowers by about eight inches (20 cm) in relation to the first stop position. The window cannot be operated during this time.

Note:

In the event of an error, or if the anti-pinch protection is activated three consecutive times, the automatic closing operation of the window will be deactivated. In order to restore the correct operation of the system, the window must be lowered.

Power Window System Initialization

If power supply is interrupted while the window is moving (AUTO or manual), the window automatic operation must be initialized once more.

The initialization procedure described below must be carried out for each door (with door closed):

1. When the window reaches the up most position, initialization will be complete.

Warning!

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle, and do not let children play with power windows. Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.

POWER SUNROOF — IF EQUIPPED

Power Sunroof

The power sunroof consists of two glass panels (the front one is power and the rear one fixed) and is fitted with a power sunshade the full length of the glass panels.

Operation of the sunroof is only possible with the ignition in ON mode. Refer to "Ignition System" in this chapter for further information.

Warning!

❒ *Never leave children unattended in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Never leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children. Do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with keyless ignition in the ON mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the power sunroof while operating the power sunroof switch. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.*

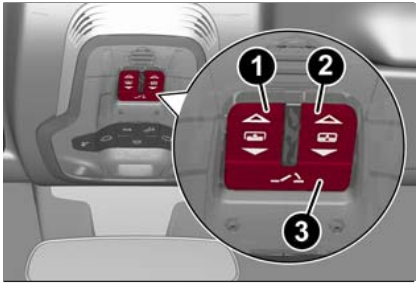
❒ *In a collision, there is a greater risk of being thrown from a vehicle with an open sunroof. You could also be seriously injured or killed. Always fasten your seat belt properly and make sure all passengers are also properly secured.*

❒ *Do not allow small children to operate the sunroof. Never allow your fingers, other body parts, or any object, to project through the sunroof opening. Injury may result.*

Opening

To open the sunroof's front panel, push the open/close button toward the rear of the vehicle to open completely.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pushing the open/close button again.



Sunroof And Power Shade Buttons

1 — Power Shade Open/Close
2 — Open/Close Button
3 — Vent Open/Close

Caution!

Do not open the sun roof if a roof rack or crossbars are fitted. Do not open the sun roof if there is snow or ice on it: you may damage it.

Closing

From the complete open position, push the open/close button toward the front of the vehicle. The roof will close completely.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pushing the open/close button again.

Vent Opening

To bring the roof into vent position, push and release the vent button.

This type of vent opening can be activated regardless of the position of the sunroof. When starting with the roof in the closed position, pushing the vent button automatically causes the sunroof to open to the vent position. If the roof is already open, the button must be held until the roof reaches the vent-opening position.

Pushing the vent button again during automatic movement of the roof will stop it.

Power Sun Shade

The sunshade is power operated.

Push the Power Shade open/close button toward the rear of the vehicle to open the sun shade.

Push the Power Shade open/close button toward the front of the vehicle to close the sun shade.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pushing the Power Shade on/off button again.

Pinch Protect Feature

The sunroof has an anti-pinch safety system capable of detecting the presence of an obstacle during the closing movement. If an obstacle is detected, the system intervenes and the movement of the sunroof is immediately reversed into opening.

Initialization Procedure

Automatic operation of the sunroof must be initialized again in case of faulty sunroof operation. It may also be necessary to initialize the sunroof after the vehicle's battery as been disconnected and then reconnected.

Proceed as follows:

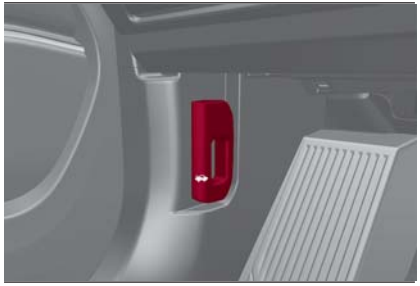
1. Push the open/close button to bring the roof into the completely closed position.
2. Cycle the ignition to STOP mode and wait at least ten seconds.
3. Cycle the ignition to AVV mode. Refer to "Ignition System" in this chapter for further information.
4. Hold the open/close button down for at least ten seconds. You should then hear the mechanical stop of the roof motor.
5. Within five seconds, hold the open/close button down. The roof will perform a complete opening and closing cycle (to indicate that the initialization procedure has been successful). If this does not occur, the procedure must be restarted from the beginning.

HOOD

Opening The Hood

To open the hood, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the release lever located on the driver's side kick panel.

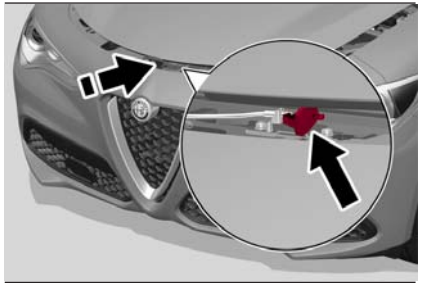


Hood Release Lever

2. Move to the outside of the vehicle and position yourself in front of the grille.

3. Lift the hood slightly.

4. Move the under-hood latch from right to left to release the hood.



Hood Latch Location

5. Raise the hood completely. The operation is assisted by the addition of two gas props which hold it in the open position.

Note:

❒ Use both hands to lift the hood. Before lifting, check that the windshield wiper arms are not raised from the windshield or in operation. Also, ensure that the vehicle is stationary and that the electric park brake is engaged.

❒ Do not tamper with the props.

❒ Assist the hood while lifting it.

Closing The Hood

To close, lower the hood to approximately 16 inches (40 cm) from the engine compartment then let it drop. Make sure that the hood is completely closed and fully latched. Do this by trying to open it. If it is not perfectly closed, do not try to push the hood lid down, but open it and repeat the procedure.

Note:

Always check that the hood is closed correctly to prevent it from opening while the vehicle is traveling. Since the hood is equipped with a double locking system, one for each side, you must check that it is closed on both its side ends.

Warning!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

POWER LIFTGATE

Unlocking of the liftgate is electrically operated and is deactivated when the vehicle is in motion.

If anything obstructs the power liftgate while it is closing or opening, the liftgate will automatically reverse to the closed or open position, provided it meets sufficient resistance.

The liftgate height is adjustable to avoid difficulties in tight spaces. To customize the liftgate opening position, proceed as follows:

1. Open the liftgate.

2. Manually move the liftgate to the desired position.

3. Push one of the closing buttons for at least five seconds (successful programming is indicated by the turn signals flashing three times).

The liftgate is now programmed to open to the set position.

This function can be selected on the Information and Entertainment System.

To set the liftgate opening height, refer to the Information and Entertainment System Owner's Manual Supplement for further information.

Opening

Opening From The Outside

When unlocked, the liftgate can be opened from outside the vehicle by pushing the external liftgate release switch. Push the switch until you hear a "click."

The liftgate can also be opened by quickly pushing the external liftgate release button on the key fob twice.

External Liftgate Release Switch

The turn signal indicators will blink and the interior lights will turn on when the liftgate is opened. They turn off automatically when the liftgate is closed.

The lights turn off automatically after a few minutes if the liftgate is left open.

Opening From The Inside

When the liftgate is locked, it can be opened from inside the vehicle by lifting the interior liftgate release button on the driver's door panel trim.

Note:

A signal will chime while the liftgate is opening or closing.

You can stop the liftgate from moving by pushing the interior liftgate release button again.

Interior Liftgate Release

1 — Interior Liftgate Release Switch

Closing

Closing From Outside

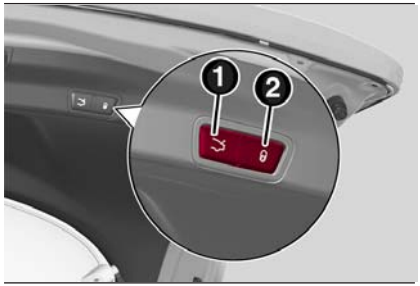
It is possible to close the liftgate by pushing:

❒ The power liftgate switch.

❒ The power lock switch located on the liftgate (all the doors, including the liftgate, will be locked).

❒ The liftgate button on the key fob twice.

❒ The Passive Entry liftgate switch on the liftgate.



Power Liftgate/Lock Switches

1 — Power Liftgate Switch
2 — Power Door Lock Switch

Note:

It is possible to stop the liftgate from moving with any of the Power Liftgate switches.

Closing From Inside

Push the power liftgate switch on the driver's door panel trim and hold until the operation is complete.

Note:

It is possible to stop the liftgate from moving by releasing the switch.

Customizing The Liftgate Opening Height

To avoid difficulties in tight spaces, you can set the height at which the liftgate opens to.

To customize the liftgate opening position, follow the steps below:

1. Open the liftgate manually and move it to the position that you want the liftgate to open to.

2. Press and hold one of the closing buttons for at least five seconds (successful acquisition is indicated by the turn signals flashing three times).

The liftgate is now programmed to open to the set position.

Hands Free Liftgate — If Equipped

To operate the Hands Free Liftgate System:

1. If the doors are locked, the system must detect the electronic key near the liftgate.

2. If the doors are unlocked, the system does not have to detect the electronic key near the liftgate.

3. Go to the rear of the vehicle, in the center and about 3 feet (1 m) from the liftgate.

4. Move your foot under the bumper, simulating a kick. When you have completed this movement, withdraw your leg. To activate the liftgate, both sensors must detect your leg.

Hands Free Liftgate Activation Zone

If it is closed, the Hands Free Liftgate unlocks and opens completely, and with another movement of the foot, it stops. A further movement of the foot reverses the direction and closes the liftgate completely, if you do not stop it again.

If it is open, with a movement of the foot, the Hands Free Liftgate closes completely, and with another movement of the foot, it stops. If the liftgate is stopped, another movement of the foot will reverse the direction and open it completely.

Note:

To conserve the battery charge, avoid performing this operation repeatedly with the engine off.

You can activate/deactivate the Hands Free Liftgate on the Information and Entertainment System by pushing the MENU button to select the Main menu, and selecting the following items:

1. Settings
2. Doors And Locks
3. Automatic Liftgate Opening Select them by turning the Rotary Pad and pushing it.

Warning!

❒ *Driving with the liftgate open can allow poisonous exhaust gases into your vehicle. You and your passengers could be injured by these fumes. Keep the liftgate closed when you are operating the vehicle.*

❒ *If you are required to drive with the liftgate open, make sure that all windows are closed, and the climate control blower switch is set at high speed. Do not use the recirculation mode.*

Warning!

During power operation, personal injury or cargo damage may occur. Ensure the liftgate travel path is clear. Make sure the liftgate is closed and latched before driving away.

Liftgate Initialization

Note:

Automatic operation of the liftgate must be initialized again in case of faulty sunroof operation. Proceed as follows:

1. Close all the doors and the liftgate.
2. Push the lock button on the key fob.
3. Push the unlock button on the key fob.

INTERNAL EQUIPMENT

Homelink

Description

Homelink is a fixed system installed on the vehicle. It can sync up to three different devices that activate garage doors, gates, lighting systems, and home or office alarm systems.

Programming

Warning!

❒ *Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.*

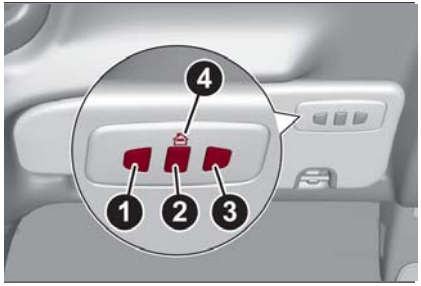
❒ *Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.*

Note:

Without starting the engine, activate the electric park brake and place the ignition in the ON position.

The following operation will delete the manufacture's standard codes and does not need to be repeated during the subsequent button programming:

❒ Push and hold the outer buttons (1 and 3). After about ten seconds, the lighted indicators will start to flash. Release both buttons.



Garage Door Opener (Homelink) Buttons

1 — Homelink Button 1
2 — Homelink Button 2
3 — Homelink Button 3
4 — Homelink Indicator

Note:

Follow the steps below to begin programming your remote control to one of the HomeLink buttons:

1. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button (1, 2 or 3).When the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly, move the portable remote control one to three inches from the HomeLink system (keeping the programmable button pushed down).

2. If the indicator does not begin to flash quickly, change the distance between the HomeLink and the portable remote control and try the procedure again.

3. The HomeLink indicator flashes, first slowly and then quickly. When the indicator starts to flash quickly, release both buttons.

Using The Homelink System

The HomeLink system activates the garage door or gate motor, just like the portable remote control. The vehicle must be within the range of the garage door and the ignition must be in the ON position.

Push the programmed button (1, 2 or 3). While the signal is being transmitted, the indicator is lit and the system (garage door, gate, etc.) will respond.

If the HomeLink system does not operate, the original portable remote control may be equipped with an alternative code (refer to "Alternative Code Synchronization").

If necessary, the original remote control can still be used to operate the system.

Alternative Code Synchronization

To check whether the garage door or gate motor has an alternative code, proceed as follows:

1. Read the garage door or gate motor manufacturer manual.

2. The portable remote control seems to have programmed to the HomeLink system, but the garage door or gate can be neither opened or closed.

3. Push the programmed button and keep it pushed (1, 2 or 3). With an alternative code system, the indicator flashes briefly, and then remains off for two seconds. This sequence is repeated for 20 seconds.

Warning!

❒ *Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.*

❒ *Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.*

Note:

To program Homelink using an Alternative Code, the vehicle must be within range of the garage door. Activate the electric park brake and turn the ignition to ON, without starting the engine.

Proceed as follows:

1. Locate the "Learn" or "Train" button on the garage door or gate motor. The color and position may vary depending on the manufacturer (consult the garage door or gate manual). Push the "Learn" or "Train" button (this normally activates the setting warning light).

2. Push the desired HomeLink button (1, 2 or 3). When the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly, move the portable remote control one to three inches from the HomeLink system (keeping the programmable button pushed down).

3. Within 30 seconds, push the programmed key (1, 2 or 3) and release it. Push the programmed button a second time and release it to conclude the operation. For some motors, the operation will probably have to be repeated a third time to end the setting.

The motor should now be capable of recognizing the signal transmitted by HomeLink and then open/close the door or gate.

Programming A Single Key

It is possible to program another original remote control on an already programmed HomeLink key by canceling the previously stored frequency.

Warning!

❒ *Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.*

❒ *Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.*

Note:

Activate the electric park brake and place the ignition to ON without starting the engine.

Proceed as follows:

1. Push the desired HomeLink button and keep it pushed (1, 2 or 3). Do not release the button until the last operation has been performed.

2. When the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly, move the portable remote control 1 to 3 inches from the system (keeping the programmable button pressed down).

If the indicator does not begin to flash quickly, change the distance between the HomeLink and the portable remote control and try the procedure again.

❒ The HomeLink indicator flashes, first slowly and then quickly. When the indicator starts to flash quickly, release both buttons on the remote control.

The system previously programmed to HomeLink has now been deleted and the new system is ready to use. This does not affect the other two HomeLink buttons in any way.

Deleting Programmed Keys

It is recommended to delete HomeLink programming before selling the vehicle.

All three keys are deleted simultaneously.

Proceed as follows:

1. Push and hold the outer buttons (1 and 3). After about ten seconds, the indicator will start to flash.

2. Release both keys.

Technical Information For After Sales Service

If you are unable to set up HomeLink successfully after following the above instructions, contact After Sales Service (HomeLink free hotline number 1-800-355-3515) with the following information:

❒ Vehicle make and model, including manufacturing year and country of purchase;

❒ Make, model, age and frequency of use of the original portable remote control (if known).

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Power Outlets

The Instrument Panel Power Outlet is located under the air conditioning control panel. It will only operate when the ignition is ON.

Instrument Panel Power Outlet

Note:

Do not connect devices, with a power rating higher than 180 W, to the outlet. Do not use power adaptors that do not fit the outlet as this may damage it.

Luggage Compartment Power Outlet

The Luggage Compartment Power Outlet is located on the left side of the luggage compartment and only works with the ignition device in the ON position.

Note:

Do not connect devices with powers higher than 150 W to the socket. Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable adaptors.

Luggage Compartment Power Outlet

115 Volt Power Inverter — If Equipped

The Power Inverter is located on the right side of the luggage compartment. It can be used for small battery-powered electrical appliances with powers up to 150 W (e.g. cameras, video camera, tablets, razors, etc.)

Note:

Do not connect devices with powers higher than 150 W to the socket. Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable adaptors.

Power Inverter

This page is intentionally left blank

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

This section gives you all the information you need to understand and use the instrument panel correctly.

INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES . . .46
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY . .47
WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL. 49
ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM . . .69

INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster

1 — Tachometer

2 — Digital Engine Oil Temperature Gauge With Overheating Warning Light

3 — Instrument Cluster Display

4 — Digital Fuel Level Gauge

5 — Speedometer

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

Instrument Cluster Display Description

This vehicle is equipped with a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.

When one or more of the doors have been opened or closed and the ignition is in the OFF position, the instrument cluster will display the vehicle mileage for a few seconds.

Reconfigurable Instrument Cluster Display

During operation, the instrument cluster display is divided into multiple sections which show driving data, warnings, and failure indications.

Instrument Cluster Display

1 — Headlight Warning Lights
2 – Gearbox Information
3 — Front, Side Anti-Collision Systems, Cruise Control
4 — Speed Limit Warning Light
5 — Compass
6 — Reconfigurable Main Area
7 — Vehicle Range
8 — Failure Warning Lights
9 — Odometer

WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

The following pages consist of warning lights and messages.

Note:

❒ The warning light turns on together with a dedicated message and/or chime when applicable. These indications are precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner's Manual, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this section in the event of a failure indication.

❒ The failure indicators appearing on the display are divided into two categories: very serious and less serious faults. Serious faults are indicated by a repeated and prolonged warning "cycle." Less serious faults are indicated by a warning "cycle" with a shorter duration. You can stop the warning cycle in both cases by pushing the button located on the windshield wiper stalk. The instrument panel warning light will stay on until the cause of the failure is eliminated.

Red Warning Lights

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
BRAKE	INSUFFICIENT BRAKE FLUID/ELECTRIC PARK BRAKE ON This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir. If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the Brake Booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.	For low brake fluid level, go to an authorized dealer to have the system checked as soon as possible. Release the electric park brake, then check that the warning light has turned off. If the warning light stays on, contact an authorized dealer.
BRAKE (ABS)	ELECTRONIC BRAKING FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD) FAILURE The simultaneous turning on of the BRAKE (red) and (ABS) (amber) warning lights with the engine on indicates either a failure of the EBD system or that the system is not available. In this case, the rear wheels may suddenly lock and the vehicle may swerve when braking abruptly.	Drive very carefully to the nearest authorized dealer to have the system inspected immediately.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	AIR BAG WARNING LIGHT This light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.	If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer.
	SEAT BELT REMINDER WARNING LIGHT When the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN position, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound and the light will turn on. When driving, if the driver or front passenger seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Safety" for further information.	Always wear your seat belt when operating the vehicle.
	OIL TEMPERATURE WARNING LIGHT This telltale indicates engine oil temperature is high.	Stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer.

Warning!

❒ *The fault of the warning light is signaled by the turning on of the icon on the instrument panel. In this case, the warning light may not indicate any faults with the restraint systems. Before proceeding, contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked immediately.*

❒ *If the warning light does not turn on when the ignition device is moved to ON or if it stays on when driving (together with the message on the display), there might be a fault in the restraint systems; in this case, the air bags or pretensioners may not deploy in the event of an accident or, in a lower number of cases, they could deploy erroneously. Before proceeding, contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked immediately.*

Amber Warning Lights

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
ABS	ANTI-LOCK BRAKE (ABS) INDICATOR LIGHT This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds. If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, then the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the brake indicator light is not on. If the ABS light is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of Anti-Lock Brakes. If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.	Drive carefully and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
(!)	TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING INDICATOR LIGHT The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed. Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire in sequence.	Continue driving for up to 50 miles (80 km) at a speed no higher then 50 mph (80 km/h). Contact an authorized dealer to have the tire repaired.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle, to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Caution!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	Tire Pressure Low The indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.	In any situation in which the message on the display is "See Manual", it is ESSENTIAL to refer to "Auxiliary Driving Systems" in "Safety," strictly complying with the indications that you find there.
ESC	ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) INDICATOR LIGHT When the ignition is cycled to ON, the indicator light illuminates, but should turn off as soon as the engine is started. **ESC System Intervention**: Intervention by the system is indicated by the flashing of the indicator light: it indicates that the vehicle is in critical stability and grip conditions.	
	ESC System Failure: If the indicator light does not turn off, or if it stays on with the engine running, a failure was found in the ESC system.	In these cases, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	Hill Start Assist System Failure: The illumination of the indicator light indicates a Hill Start Assist system failure.	
ESC OFF	ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) OFF INDICATOR LIGHT — IF EQUIPPED When the ignition is cycled to ON, the indicator light illuminates, but should turn off as soon as the engine is started. The indicator light illuminates to indicate that some active safety systems have been partially or totally deactivated. For further details about the active safety systems, refer to "Active Safety Systems" in "Safety." When the active safety systems are reactivated, the indicator light turns off.	
	REAR FOG LIGHT The indicator illuminates when the rear fog light is activated.	

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	ENGINE CHECK/MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT (MIL) In normal conditions, when the ignition is cycled to ON, the indicator light illuminates, but it should turn off as soon as the engine is started. The operation of the indicator light may be checked by the traffic police using specific devices. Comply with the laws and regulations of the country where you are driving.	Under these conditions, the vehicle can continue travelling at moderate speed but without demanding excessive effort from the engine or high speed. Prolonged use of the vehicle with the indicator light on constantly may cause damage. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Caution!

If, turning the ignition device to ON, the warning light does not turn on or if it turns on steadily or flashing when travelling (on some versions together with the message on the display), contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
OFF	FORWARD COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM (FCW) — IF EQUIPPED This indicator light informs the driver that the frontal collision alarm function is not enabled.	Drive carefully and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	FUEL RESERVE / LIMITED RANGE The indicator light (or the symbol in the display) illuminates when about 2.4 gallons (9 liters) of fuel is left in the tank.	Refuel the vehicle.

Warning!

If the warning light (or the icon on the display) flashes while driving, contact an authorized dealer.

Green Telltale Indicator Lights

Indicator light	What It Means	What To Do
	PARK/HEADLIGHT ON INDICATOR LIGHT This indicator will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on. Headlight Off Delay This function allows the headlights to remain on for 30, 60 or 90 seconds after the ignition was placed in the STOP position.	
	LEFT TURN SIGNAL The instrument cluster directional arrow will flash independently for the left turn signal as selected, as well as the exterior turn signal lamp(s) (front and rear) as selected when the multifunction lever is moved down (left). This directional arrow will flash in conjunction with the right directional arrow when the hazard warning light button is pushed.	
	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL The instrument cluster directional arrow will flash independently for the right turn signal as selected, as well as the exterior turn signal lamp(s) (front and rear) as selected when the multifunction lever is moved up (right). This directional arrow will flash in conjunction with the left directional arrow when the hazard warning light button is pushed.	
	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (On Base Instrument Cluster Display) This indicator light will illuminate when the automatic high beam headlights are activated.	

Blue Telltale Indicator Light

Indicator Light	What It Means	What To Do
	HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (On Base Instrument Cluster Display) This indicator shows that the high beam headlights are on. Push the multifunction control lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Push the lever a second time to switch the headlights back to low beam. Pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, “flash to pass” scenario.	

Red Symbols

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE This telltale indicates low engine oil pressure. If the telltale turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this telltale turns on. Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This telltale does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. **Note:** Do not use the vehicle until the failure has been solved. The illumination of the telltale does not indicate the amount of oil in the engine: the oil level can be checked on the display upon entering the vehicle and also by activating the "Oil level" function on the Information and Entertainment System.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Caution!

If the LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE symbol switches on when driving, stop the engine immediately and contact an authorized dealer.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	ENGINE TEMPERATURE WARNING LIGHT This telltale warns of an overheated engine condition. If the engine coolant temperature is too high, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound. If the temperature reaches the upper limit, a continuous chime will be sound for four minutes or until the engine is allowed to cool whichever comes first.	*In normal driving conditions*: stop the vehicle, shut off the engine and check that the coolant level in the reservoir is not below the MIN mark. In this case, wait for the engine to cool down, then slowly and carefully open the cap, top offwith coolant and check that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir itself. Also check visually for any fluid leaks. Contact an authorized dealer if the telltale comes on when the engine is started again. *If the vehicle is used under demanding conditions (e.g. in high-performance driving)*: slow down and, if the telltale stays on, stop the vehicle. Stop for two or three minutes with the engine running and slightly accelerated to facilitate better coolant circulation, then turn the engine off. Check that the coolant level is correct as described above.
	POWER STEERING FAILURE If the telltale remains on, you could not have steering assistance and the effort required to operate the steering wheel could be increased; steering is, however, possible. **Note:** After the battery is disconnected, the steering wheel must be initialized. The Power Steering Failure light on the instrument panel will illuminate to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other, and then turn in back to the central position.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	DOOR OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT The telltale illuminates when one or more doors are not completely shut. An chime will signal when the doors is open and the vehicle is moving.	Close all the doors properly.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	HOOD OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT The telltale turns on when the hood is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open hood appears on the display. A buzzer is heard when the hood is open and the vehicle is moving.	Fully close the hood.
	LIFTGATE OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT The telltale turns on when the liftgate is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open liftgate appears on the display. A buzzer is heard when the liftgate is open and the vehicle is moving.	Close the liftgate.
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FAILURE The telltale illuminates, together with a buzzer warning, to indicate that the automatic transmission is faulty.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Caution!

Driving the vehicle with this symbol on may severely damage the gearbox, with resulting breakage. The oil may also overheat: contact with hot engine or with exhaust components at high temperature could cause fires.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL (ETC) WARNING LIGHTS This telltale, along with the related message, signals a failure in the electronic throttle control system (ETC). If a failure is detected, the telltale illuminates while the engine is running. If the telltale flashes with the engine running, immediate intervention is required. A loss of performance, irregular/high idling speed or engine stopping might take place and the vehicle may need to be towed.	Place the gear selector in the park position and turn the vehicle off: the telltale should switch off. Start the vehicle. If the telltale remains solid (the telltale does not flash) with engine running, the vehicle can still be driven until proper maintenance can be performed. If the telltale flashes with the engine running, do not drive the vehicle. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL This telltale appears on the panel when the engine oil level falls below the minimum recommended value. OIL OVER MAXIMUM LEVEL The telltale turns on, along with the respective message on the instrument cluster display, to indicate that the engine oil level is too high.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked. Run the engine under 3000 RPM during this time.
AST	ALFA STEERING TORQUE (AST) FAILURE The illumination of the telltale signals a failure in the automatic steering correction system.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked.
	ALTERNATOR FAILURE The illumination of the telltale with engine on corresponds to an alternator failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	BRAKE DISC TEMPERATURE When the telltale illuminates, it indicates an excessive temperature of the brake discs.	Let the brake system cool down by reducing the vehicle's speed.

Warning Lights	What It Means	What To Do
	ENGINE IMMOBILIZER FAILURE / BREAK-IN ATTEMPT Engine Immobilizer System Failure The telltale will illuminate to report a failure of the Engine Immobilizer system.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	Break-In Attempt The telltale will illuminate when the ignition is cycled to ON position, to indicate a possible break-in attempt detected by the alarm system. Electronic Key Not Recognized The telltale will illuminate when the engine is started and the electronic key is not recognized by the system. Alarm System Failure The telltale will illuminate to report an alarm system failure.	
	FUEL CUT-OFF INDICATOR LIGHT The telltale will illuminate after an accident has occurred and the system has shut the fuel off.	For reactivating the fuel cut-off system, refer to "Enhanced Accident Response System" in "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information. If it is not possible to restore the fuel supply, contact an authorized dealer.
	PARK SENSORS SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate when the system has failed or is not available.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked.
	POSSIBLE ICE ON ROAD The telltale will illuminate when the outside temperature falls to or below 37°F (3°C).	Drive carefully during icy conditions.

Warning Lights	What It Means	What To Do
	ENGINE OIL CHANGE REQUIRED — IF EQUIPPED The telltale is illuminated only for a limited time. **Note:** After the first indication, each time the engine is started the symbol will continue to illuminate as described above until the oil is changed. If the telltale flashes, this does not mean that there is a fault on the vehicle, rather it simply reports that it is now necessary to change the oil as a result of regular use of the vehicle. The deterioration of engine oil is accelerated by using the vehicle for short drives, preventing the engine from reaching operating temperature.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Caution!

Deteriorated engine oil should be replaced as soon as possible after the symbol is switched on, and never more than 500 miles (805 km) after it first switches on. Failure to observe the above may result in severe damage to the engine and invalidate the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When this symbol comes on, it does not mean that the level of engine oil is low, so if it flashes you do not need to top up the engine oil.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of engine oil pressure sensor failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	ENGINE OIL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of engine oil level sensor failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the case of failure of the Forward Collision Warning system.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	START & STOP SYSTEM FAILURE This telltale will illuminate to report a Stop & Start system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	RAIN SENSOR FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the case of failure of the automatic windshield wiper.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AUTO	DUSK SENSOR FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the case of failure of the automatic low beam alignment.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	BLIND SPOT MONITORING SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of a Blind Spot Monitoring system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of fuel level sensor failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	EXTERIOR LIGHTS FAILURE The telltale will illuminate to indicate a failure on the following lights: daytime running lights (DRLs) / parking lights / trailer turn signal indicators (if present) / trailer lights (if present) / side lights / turn signal indicators / rear fog light / reversing light / brake lights / license plate lights.	The failure may be caused by a blown bulb, a blown protection fuse, or an interruption of the electrical connection. Replace the bulb or the relevant fuse. Contact an authorized dealer.
	KEYLESS SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of keyless system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of fuel cut-off system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate in the event of a fault in the Lane Departure Warning system.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AUTO	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS FAILURE — IF EQUIPPED The telltale will illuminate to report a failure of the automatic high beam headlights.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID OVERHEATING The telltale will illuminate in the case of transmission overheating, after a particularly demanding use. In this case an engine performance limitation is carried out.	Wait for the telltale to turn off with the engine off or idling.
	AUDIO SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate to report a failure of the audio system.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
LIM	SPEED LIMITER SYSTEM FAILURE While driving, the telltale will illuminate to signal a Speed Limiter system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	LOOSE FUEL FILLER CAP Lights up if the fuel tank cap is open or not properly closed.	Tighten the cap properly.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE FAILURE The telltale will illuminate and a message will display to signal a failure in the electric park brake system. This failure may partially or completely block the vehicle because the park brake could remain activated even if automatically or manually disengaged using the relevant controls. In these circumstances, you can disengage the park brake following the emergency disengagement procedure described in "In Case Of Emergency."	If you are still able to drive the vehicle (park brake is not engaged), drive to the nearest authorized dealer and remember, when executing any maneuvers/commands, that the electric park brake is not operational.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	LOW COOLANT LEVEL — IF EQUIPPED This telltale will illuminate to indicate that the vehicle coolant level is low.	Top up, as described in "Servicing And Maintenance."
	SERVICE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM This light will illuminate when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not operating and needs service.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked.
	WEAR ON BRAKE PADS This light will illuminate when the brake pads have reached their wear limit.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. **Note:** Always use genuine parts or similar because the Integrated Brake System (IBS) system could detect anomalies.
	WEAR ON CCB BRAKE DISCS — IF EQUIPPED This light will illuminate when the carbon ceramic brake discs have reached their wear limit.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Warning!

It is recommended to use only OEM brake pads in order to ensure the original performance of the braking system.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	DYNAMIC DRIVE CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate to signal a failure in the dynamic drive control system.	Contact an authorized dealer.
	WINDSHIELD WIPER FAILURE Signals a windshield wiper failure.	Contact an authorized dealer.
	GENERIC INDICATION Signals information and failures. The accompanying messages describe the failure.	Contact an authorized dealer.
AWD	FOUR WHEEL DRIVE FAILURE This telltale will illuminate to report a four wheel drive system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	AFS SYSTEM FAILURE The telltale will illuminate to indicate the automatic directional light system failure.	Go to an authorized dealer to have the system checked.
SOFT	SOFT SUSPENSION CALIBRATION INSERTION — IF EQUIPPED The telltale will illuminate when the most comfortable suspension setting is activated.	
	SHOCK ABSORBERS FAILURE (ADC) — IF EQUIPPED While driving, if the telltale illuminates, it signals a failure in the suspension system.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked.

Warning Light	What It Means	What To Do
	WINDSHIELD WASHER LIQUID LEVEL The telltale will illuminate to indicate that the level of the windshield and headlight washing fluid (if any) is low.	To refill the liquid, refer to "Engine Compartment" in "Servicing And Maintenance." Always use liquid with the features indicated in the "Fluids And Lubricants" section in "Technical Specifications."
	TRAILER LIGHT CONTROL UNIT FAILURE The telltale illuminates to indicate that there has been a failure in the control unit that manages the trailer lights.	Check that the trailer light is correctly connected to the socket. If the fault persists the next time you start the engine, contact an authorized dealer to have the system checked.
	LIFTGATE ELECTRIC OPENING/CLOSING FAILURE The telltale illuminates to indicate a liftgate electric opening/closing system failure.	Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.

Green Symbols

Symbol	What It Means
	HEADLIGHTS The telltale will illuminate when the headlights are turned on.
AUTO	AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHTS The symbol lights up when the automatic headlights are on.
	START & STOP OPERATION The telltale will illuminate in the case of Start & Stop system intervention (stopping the engine). When the engine is restarted, the telltale will shut off (for the engine restarting modes refer to "Stop/Start" in "Starting And Operating").
	SPEED CONTROL ACTIVATED The telltale will illuminate when the Speed Control system is activated.

Symbol	What It Means
	ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM The symbol comes on when the Adaptive Cruise Control system is activated.
	HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) SYSTEM The telltale illuminates when the HDC system intervenes.

Blue Symbols

Symbol	What it means
AUTO	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS The telltale will illuminate when the automatic high beam headlights are activated.
	HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS The telltale will illuminate when the high beam headlights are activated.

ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM

Operation

The OBD (Onboard Diagnostic system) carries out a continuous diagnosis of the components of the vehicle related to emissions.

It also alerts the driver of when these components are no longer in peak condition by switching on the warning light on the instrument panel (see "Warning Lights And Messages" paragraph in this chapter).

The aim of the OBD system (Onboard Diagnostic) is to:

❒ Monitor the efficiency of the system
❒ Indicate an increase in emissions
❒ Indicate the need to replace damaged components

The vehicle also has a connector, which can interface with appropriate tools, that makes it possible to read the error codes stored in the electronic control units together with a series of specific parameters for engine operation and diagnosis. This check can be carried out by your authorized dealer.

Note:

After eliminating a fault, to check the system completely, your authorized dealer is obliged to run tests and, if necessary certain road tests.

Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity

Your vehicle is required to have an Onboard Diagnostic system (OBD II) and a connection port to allow access to information related to the performance of your emissions controls. Authorized service technicians may need to access this information to assist with the diagnosis and service of your vehicle and emissions system.

Warning!

❒ *ONLY an authorized service technician should connect equipment to the OBD II connection port in order to diagnose or service your vehicle.*

❒ *If unauthorized equipment is connected to the OBD II connection port, such as a driver-behavior tracking device, it may:*
- *Be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.*
- *Access, or allow others to access, information stored in your vehicle systems, including personal information.*

For further information, refer to "Cybersecurity" in "Multimedia".

This page is intentionally left blank

SAFETY

This very important section describes the safety systems that your vehicle may be equipped with, and provides instructions on how to use them correctly.

ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS 72
AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS 76
OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS . .86
SAFETY TIPS 112

ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS

The vehicle may be equipped with the following active safety devices:

❒ Anti-Lock Braking (ABS) System

❒ Drive Train Control (DTC) System

❒ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) System

❒ Traction Control System (TCS)

❒ Panic Brake Assist (PBA) System

❒ Hill Start Assist (HSA) System

❒ Dynamic Steering Torque (DST) System

❒ Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

For the operation of the systems, see the following pages.

Anti-Lock Braking (ABS) System

An integral part of the braking system, the ABS prevents one or more wheels from locking and slipping in all road surface conditions, regardless of the intensity of the braking action. The system ensures that the vehicle can be controlled even during emergency braking, allowing the driver to optimize stopping distances.

The system intervenes during braking when the wheels are about to lock, typically in emergency braking or low-grip conditions where locking may be more frequent.

The system also improves control and stability of the vehicle when braking on a surface where the grip of the left and right wheels varies, such as in a corner.

The Electronic Braking Force Distribution (EBD) system works with the ABS, allowing the brake force to be distributed between the front and rear wheels.

System Intervention

The ABS equipped on this vehicle is provided with the "Brake-By-Wire" (Integrated Brake System - IBS) function. With this system, the command given by pressing the brake pedal is not transmitted hydraulically, but electrically. Therefore, the light pulsation that is felt on the pedal with the traditional system is no longer noticeable.

Warning!

❒ *The ABS contains sophisticated electronic equipment that may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.*

❒ *Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to a collision. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.*

❒ *The ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.*

❒ *The ABS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.*

❒ *The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner that could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.*

Drive Train Control (DTC) System

Some models of this vehicle are equipped with an All-Wheel Drive system (AWD), which offers an optimal drive for countless driving conditions and road surfaces. The system reduces the slipping of the tires to a minimum, automatically redistributing the torque to the front and rear wheels as needed.

To maximize fuel savings, the vehicle with AWD automatically passes to rear-wheel drive (RWD) when the road and environmental conditions are such that

they wouldn't cause the tires to slip. When the road and environmental conditions require better traction, the vehicle automatically goes to AWD mode.

Note:

❒ There may be a brief delay in shifting to AWD mode after a tire slipping event occurs.

❒ If the system failure symbol switches on, after starting the engine or while driving, it means that the AWD system is not working properly. If the warning message activates frequently, it is recommended to carry out the maintenance operations.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) System

The ESC system improves the directional control and stability of the vehicle in various driving conditions.

The ESC system corrects the vehicle's understeer and oversteer, distributing the brake force on the appropriate wheels. The torque supplied by the engine can also be reduced in order to maintain control of the vehicle.

The ESC system uses sensors installed on the vehicle to determine the path that the driver intends to follow and compares it with the vehicle's effective path. When the real path deviates from the desired path, the ESC system intervenes to counter the vehicle's understeer or oversteer.

❒ *Oversteer* occurs when the vehicle is turning more than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.

❒ *Understeer* occurs when the vehicle is turning less than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.

System Intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

Warning!

❒ *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent accidents resulting from loss of vehicle control due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.*

❒ *Vehicle modifications, or failure to properly maintain your vehicle, may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle, and may negatively affect the performance of the ESC system. Changes to the steering system, suspension, braking system, tire type and size or wheel size may adversely affect ESC performance. Improperly inflated and unevenly worn tires may also degrade ESC performance. Any vehicle modification or poor vehicle maintenance that reduces the effectiveness of the ESC system can increase the risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.*

Traction Control System (TCS)

The system automatically operates in the event of slipping, loss of grip on wet roads (hydroplaning), and acceleration on one or both drive wheels on roads that are slippery, snowy, icy, etc. Depending on the slipping conditions, two different control systems are activated:

❒ If the slipping involves both drive wheels, the system intervenes, reducing the power transmitted by the engine.

❒ If the slipping only involves one of the drive wheels, the Brake Limited Differential (BLD) function is activated, automatically braking the wheel which is slipping (the behavior of a self-locking differential is simulated). This will increase the engine torque transferred to the wheel which isn't slipping.

System Intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

Panic Brake Assist (PBA) System

The PBA system is designed to improve the vehicle's braking capacity during emergency braking.

The system detects emergency braking by monitoring the speed and force with which the brake pedal is pressed, and consequently applies the optimal brake pressure. This can reduce the braking distance: the PBA system therefore complements the ABS.

Maximum assistance from the PBA system is obtained by pressing the brake pedal very quickly. In addition, the brake pedal should be pressed continuously during braking, avoiding intermittent presses, to get the most out of the system. Do not reduce pressure on the brake pedal until braking is no longer necessary.

The PBA system is deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Warning!

The Panic Brake Assist (PBA) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. PBA cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of a PBA-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner, which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

Hill Start Assist (HSA) System

This is an integral part of the ESC system and facilitates starting on slopes, activating automatically in the following cases:

❒ Uphill: the vehicle is stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, the engine is running, the brake is pressed, and the transmission is in NEUTRAL (N) or a gear other than REVERSE (R) is engaged.

❒ Downhill: the vehicle is stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, the engine is running, the brake is pressed, and the transmission is in REVERSE (R).

When setting off, the ESC system control unit maintains the braking pressure on the wheels until the engine torque necessary for starting is reached, or in any case for a maximum of two seconds, allowing your right foot to be moved easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

The system will automatically deactivate after two seconds without starting, gradually releasing the braking pressure. During this release stage, it is possible to hear a typical mechanical brake release noise, indicating the imminent movement of the vehicle.

Warning!

There may be situations where the Hill Start Assist (HSA) will not activate and slight rolling may occur, such as on minor hills or with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer. HSA is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive to distance to other vehicles, people, and objects, and most importantly brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

Dynamic Steering Torque (DST) System

The DST function uses the integration of the ESC system with the electric power steering to increase the safety level of the whole vehicle.

In critical situations for example (braking on surfaces with different grip conditions), the ESC system controls the steering through the DST function to implement an additional torque contribution on the steering wheel in order to suggest the most correct maneuver to the driver.

The coordinated action of the brakes and steering increases the safety and control of the vehicle.

Note:

The DST feature is only meant to help the driver realize the correct course of action through small torques on the steering wheel, which means the effectiveness of the DST feature is highly dependent on the driver's sensitivity and overall reaction to the applied torque. It is very important to realize that this feature will not steer the vehicle, meaning the driver is still responsible for steering the vehicle.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

The HDC function is an integral part of the ESC system, keeping the vehicle at a constant speed while descending a hill by actively controlling the brakes.

HDC aims to create vehicle stability and safer driving in various situations, including poor grip conditions and steep descents.

The system has three different modes:

❒ Off: the system is deactivated

❒ Enabled: the system is enabled and ready to intervene when the activation conditions are met

❒ Active: the system actively controls the vehicle speed

Enabling The System

To enable the system, push the HDC switch located on the steering wheel.

HDC Switch

The system is only enabled if the vehicle speed is below 22 mph (35 km/h).

Activation of the HDC system is indicated by the white icon appearing in the instrument cluster display.

HDC Symbol

Activation Of The System

Once enabled, the HDC system will activate automatically if the vehicle is driven on a downhill slope with sufficient gradient, greater than 10%.

The speed set for the HDC system can be adjusted using the SET switch located on the steering wheel.

HDC Speed SET Switch

Once the desired speed has been reached, release the SET switch and the HDC system will maintain the set speed. After set speed is established, the HDC system will automatically brake to keep the vehicle at the set speed if the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle gets close to the set speed.

It is possible to reduce the set speed with the brake pedal. When the pedal is released, the system will adjust the set speed to the new current speed.

Note:

Vehicle set speed can only be set while traveling between 4 mph (6 km/h) and 13 mph (25 km/h), and the feature will only apply to a set speed placed in the range of 6 mph (10 km/h) to 37 mph (60 km/h).

The driver can cancel HDC system intervention at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal.

System Deactivation

The HDC system will be deactivated, but remain available, if any of the following conditions are met:

❒ The vehicle is traveling on a downhill slope with a gradient less than 10%, on a level surface, or on an uphill grade.

❒ PARK (P) mode is engaged.

Disabling The System

The system is disabled if any of the following conditions are met:

❒ The HDC switch is pressed.

❒ Cruise Control / Active Cruise Control is activated.

❒ A vehicle speed of 37 mph (60 km/h) is exceeded.

System deactivation is shown by the icon on the display turning off.

Warning!

HDC is only intended to assist the driver in controlling vehicle speed when descending hills. The driver must remain attentive to the driving conditions and is responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle speed.

AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS

The following auxiliary driving systems are available in this vehicle:

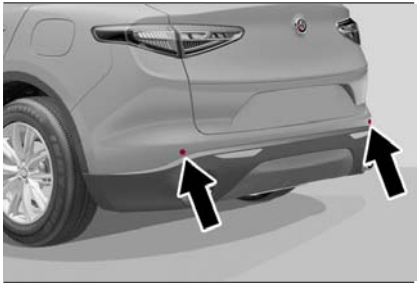
❒ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) — If Equipped

❒ Forward Collision Warning Plus (FCW+) — If Equipped

❒ Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

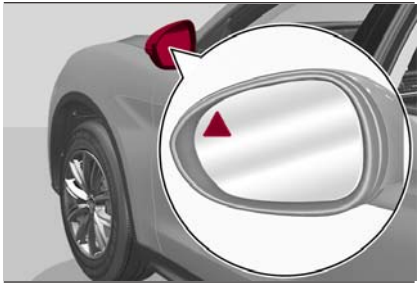
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System — If Equipped

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system uses two radar sensors, located in the rear bumper (one on each side), to detect the presence of other vehicles in the rear side blind spots of your vehicle.



Rear Sensor Location

The system warns the driver about the presence of other vehicles in the detection area by illuminating the warning light located within the door mirror on the side in which the other vehicle was detected.



BSM Indicator Light

When the engine is started, the warning light illuminates briefly to signal the driver that the system is active.

Sensors

The sensors are activated when any forward gear is engaged at a speed higher than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or when REVERSE is engaged.

The sensors are temporarily deactivated when the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is in PARK (P).

The detection area of the system covers approximately a lane on both sides of the vehicle which is around 9 feet (3 m).

This area begins from the door mirror and extends for approximately 19 feet (6 m) toward the rear part of the vehicle.

When the sensors are active, the system monitors the detection areas on both sides of the vehicle and warns the driver about the possible presence of vehicles in these areas.

While driving, the system monitors the detection area from three different input points (side, rear and front) to check whether an alert needs to be sent to the driver. The system can detect the presence of a vehicle in one of these three areas.

Note:

❒ The system does not alert the driver of the presence of fixed objects (e.g. safety barriers, poles, walls, etc.). However, in some circumstances, the system may activate in the presence of these objects. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction.

❒ The system does not alert the driver about the presence of vehicles coming from the opposite direction, in the adjacent lanes.

Warning!

The Blind Spot Monitoring system is only an aid to help detect objects in the blind spot zones. The BSM system is not designed to detect pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. Even if your vehicle is equipped with the BSM system, always check your vehicle's mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use your turn signal before changing lanes. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Note:

❒ For the system to operate properly, the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located must stay free from snow, ice and dirt gathered from the road surface.

❒ Do not cover the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located with any object (e.g. adhesives, bike rack, etc.).

❒ If you wish to install a rear tow eye after purchasing the vehicle, you will need to deactivate the system via the Information and Entertainment System. To access the function, select the following items in sequence on the main menu:

1. "Settings."
2. "Safety."
3. "Blind Spot Alert."

Rear View

The system detects vehicles coming from the rear part of your vehicle on both sides and entering the rear detection area with a difference in speed of less than 31 mph (50 km/h) in relation to your vehicle.

Overtaking Vehicles

If another vehicle is overtaken slowly, with a difference in speed of less than approximately 15 mph (25 km/h) and the vehicle stays in the blind spot for approximately 1.5 seconds, the warning light on the door mirror of the corresponding side illuminates.

If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is greater than approximately 15 mph (25 km/h), the warning light does not illuminate.

Rear Cross Path Detection (RCP) System

This system assists the driver during reverse maneuvers in the case of reduced visibility.

The RCP system monitors the rear detection areas on both sides of the vehicle to detect objects moving toward the sides of the vehicle, with a minimum speed between approximately 1 mph (1 km/h) and 2 mph (3 km/h) and objects moving at a maximum speed of 21 mph (35 km/h), in areas such as parking lots.

The system activation is signaled to the driver by an audible warning.

Note:

If the sensors are covered by objects or vehicles, the system may not work as intended.

Warning!

Rear Cross Path Detection (RCP) is not a back up aid system. It is intended to be used to help a driver detect an oncoming vehicle in a parking lot situation. Drivers must be careful when backing up, even when using RCP. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Operating Mode

The system may be activated/deactivated via the Information and Entertainment System. To access the function, select the following items on the main menu in sequence:

1. “Settings.”
2. “Safety.”
3. “Blind Spot Alert.”

"Blind Spot Alert", "Visual" Mode

When the system is enabled, the warning light within the door mirror on the side of the detected object illuminates.

The visual warning on the mirror will blink if the driver activates the turn signals, thus indicating the intention to change lane.

The warning light will be constant if the driver stays in the same lane.

"Blind Spot Alert" Function Deactivation

When the system is deactivated ("Blind Spot Alert" mode off), the BSM or RCP systems will not emit neither an acoustic nor visual warning.

The BSM system will store the operating mode that was active when the engine was stopped. Each time the engine is started, the operating mode last set will be recalled and used.

General Information

This vehicle has systems that operate on radio frequency that comply with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.

2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) System — If Equipped

This is a driving assistance system composed of a radar located behind the front bumper and a camera located in the center of the windshield.

Front Bumper Radar Location

Windshield Camera Location

In the event of an imminent collision, the system intervenes by automatically applying the vehicle's brakes to prevent a collision or reduce its effects.

The system provides the driver with audible and visual signals through specific messages on the instrument cluster display.

The system may lightly brake to warn the driver if a possible frontal accident is detected (limited braking). Signals and limited braking are intended to allow the driver to react promptly, in order to prevent or reduce the effects of a potential accident.

In situations with the risk of collision, if the system detects no intervention by the driver, it provides automatic braking to help slow the vehicle and mitigate the potential frontal collision (automatic braking). If intervention by the driver on the brake pedal is detected, but not deemed sufficient, the system may intervene in order to improve the reaction of the braking system, therefore reducing vehicle speed further (additional assistance in braking stage).

The system will intervene automatically in case of imminent collision or impact against a pedestrian crossing the road (speed under 31 mph (50 km/h).

Note:

For safety reasons, when the vehicle has stopped, the brake calipers may remain blocked for about two seconds. Make sure you press the brake pedal if the vehicle moves slightly forward.

Warning!

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) is not intended to avoid a collision on its own, nor can FCW detect every type of potential collision. The driver has the responsibility to avoid a collision by controlling the vehicle via braking and steering. Failure to follow this warning could lead to serious injury or death.

Engagement/Disengagement

The following functions can be selected in sequence using the Information and Entertainment System:

1. "Settings."
2. "Safety."
3. "Forward Collision Warning."
4. "Mode."

Select from among three operating modes:

❒ **Warning and brake**: the system (if active), in addition to the visual and audible warnings, provides limited braking, automatic braking and additional assistance in braking stage, where the driver does not brake sufficiently in the event of a potential frontal impact.

❒ **Only warning**: the system (if active), does not provide limited braking, but guarantees automatic braking or additional assistance in braking stage, where the driver does not brake at all or not sufficiently in the event of a potential frontal impact.

❒ **Disable**: the system does not provide visual and audible warnings, limited braking, automatic braking or additional assistance in braking stage. The system will therefore provide no indication of a possible collision.

Activation/Deactivation

The Forward Collision Warning system is activated whenever the engine is started regardless of what is shown in the Information and Entertainment System.

Following a deactivation, the system will not warn the driver about the possible collision with a preceding vehicle, regardless of the setting selected in the Information and Entertainment System.

Note:

Each time the engine is started, the system is activated regardless of what setting was selected when the engine was turned OFF.

This function is not active at a speed lower than 4 mph (7 km/h) or higher than 125 mph (200 km/h).

The system is active:

❒ Each time the engine is started.

❒ In the Information and Entertainment System.

❒ When the ignition is in the ON position.

❒ When the vehicle speed is between 4 mph (7 km/h) and 124 mph (200 km/h).

❒ When the front seat belts are fastened.

Changing The System Sensitivity

The sensitivity of the system can be changed through the Information and Entertainment System menu, choosing from one of the following three options: "Near", "Med" or "Far". Refer to the description in the "Information and Entertainment System Supplement" for how to change the settings.

The default setting is "Med". With this setting, the system warns the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a standard distance, between that of the other two settings.

With the system sensitivity set to "Far", the system will warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a greater distance, thus providing the possibility of acting on the brakes more lightly and gradually. This setting provides the drivers with the maximum possible reaction time to prevent a potential accident.

With the option set to "Near", the system will alert the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is close. This setting offers the driver a lower reaction time compared to the "Med" and "Far" settings, in the event of a potential collision, but permits more dynamic driving of the vehicle.

The system sensitivity setting is kept in the memory when the engine is turned OFF.

System Limited Operation Warning

If a dedicated message is displayed, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred. The possible reasons of this limitation are something is blocking the camera view or a fault.

If an obstruction is signaled, clean the area of the radar on the front bumper, and the camera area on the windshield.

If a fault in the system is occurring, it will still be possible to drive the vehicle normally, but automatic braking will not be available in the event of an impending collision.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation. Should the fault persist, contact your authorized dealer.

System Failure Signaling

If the system turns off and a dedicated message is shown on the display, it means that there is a fault with the system.

In this case, it is still possible to drive the vehicle, but you are advised to contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Radar Indication Not Available

If conditions are such that the radar cannot detect obstacles correctly, the system is deactivated and a dedicated message appears on the display. This generally occurs in the event of poor visibility, such as when it is snowing or raining heavily.

The function of this system can also be temporarily reduced due to obstructions such as mud, dirt or ice on the bumper. In such cases, a dedicated message will be shown on the display and the system will be deactivated. This message can sometimes appear in conditions of high reflectivity (e.g. tunnels with reflective tiles or ice or snow). When the conditions limiting the system functions end, it will go back to normal and complete operation.

In certain cases, this dedicated message could be displayed when the radar is not detecting any vehicles or objects within its view range.

If atmospheric conditions are not the reason behind this message, check if the sensor is dirty. It could be necessary to clean or remove any obstructions in the area.

If the message appears frequently, even in the absence of atmospheric conditions such as snow, rain, mud or other obstructions, contact your authorized dealer for a sensor alignment check.

In the absence of visible obstructions, manually removing the decorative cover trim and cleaning the radar surface could be required. Have this operation performed at your authorized dealer.

Note:

It is recommended that you do not install devices, accessories or aerodynamic attachments in front of the sensor or darken it in any way, as this can compromise the correct functioning of the system.

Frontal Collision Alarm With Active Braking — If Equipped

If this function is selected, the brakes are operated to reduce the speed of the vehicle in the event of potential frontal impact.

This function applies an additional braking pressure if the braking pressure applied by the driver does not suffice to prevent potential frontal impact.

The function is active with speed above 4 mph (7 km/h).

Driving In Special Conditions

In certain driving conditions, system intervention might be unexpected or delayed. The driver must therefore be very careful, keeping control of the vehicle to drive in complete safety.

❒ Driving close to a bend.

❒ The vehicle ahead is leaving a roundabout.

❒ Vehicles with small dimensions and/or not aligned in the driving lane.

❒ Lane change by other vehicles.

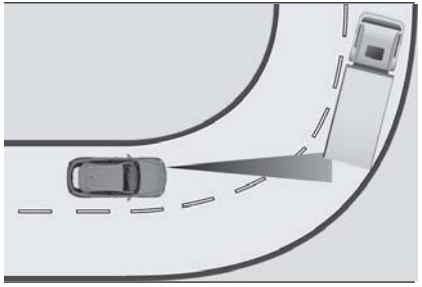
❒ Vehicles traveling at right angles to the vehicle.

Note:

In particularly complex traffic conditions, the driver can deactivate the system manually through the Information and Entertainment System.

Driving Close To A Bend

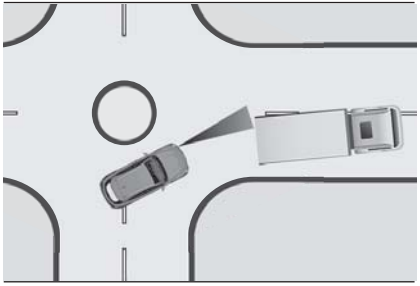
When entering or leaving a wide bend, the system may detect a vehicle in front you, but not driving in the same driving lane. In cases such as these, the system may intervene.



Driving Around Wide Curves

The Vehicle Ahead Is Leaving A Roundabout

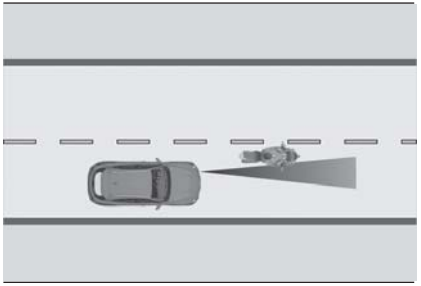
On a roundabout, the system could intervene when it detects a vehicle ahead that is leaving the roundabout.



Driving In Roundabouts

Vehicles With Small Dimensions And/Or Not Aligned In The Driving Lane

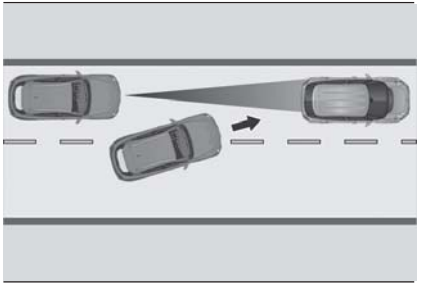
The system cannot detect vehicles in front of the vehicle if they are outside the range of the radar sensor or may not react to small vehicles, such as bicycles or motorcycles.



Driving Near Small Vehicles

Lane Change By Other Vehicles

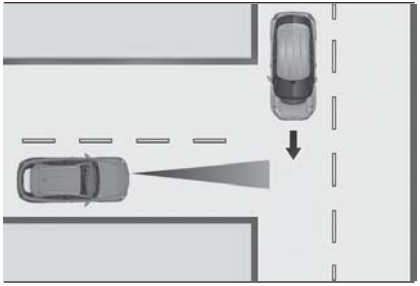
Vehicles suddenly changing lanes to enter the same lane as your vehicle within the operating range of the radar sensor, may cause the system to intervene.



Other Vehicles Changing Lanes

Vehicles Traveling At Right Angles To The Vehicle

The system could temporarily react to a vehicle that is passing at right angles through the radar sensor's operating range.



Other Vehicle Passing Through Radar Range

Warning!

❒ *The system has not been designed to prevent impacts and cannot detect possible conditions leading to an accident in advance. Failure to take into account this warning may lead to serious or fatal injuries.*

❒ *The system may activate, assessing the trajectory of the vehicle, for the presence of reflecting metal objects different from other vehicles, such as safety barriers, road signs, barriers before parking lots, tollgates, level crossings, gates, railways, objects near road constructions sites or higher than the vehicle (e.g. a fly-over). In the same way, the system may intervene inside multi-story parking lots or tunnels, or due to a glare on the road surface. These possible activations are a consequence of the real driving scenario coverage by the system and must not be regarded as faults.*

❒ *The system has been designed for road use only. If the vehicle is driven on a track, the system must be deactivated to avoid unnecessary warnings. Automatic deactivation is signaled by the dedicated warning light/symbol switching on in the instrument panel (refer to the instructions in the "Warning Lights And Messages On The Instrument Panel" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information).*

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that sends the inflation pressure information of each tire to the control unit, and will signal the driver in the event of insufficient tire pressure.

Tire pressure will vary with temperature by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will also decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle's tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven. This is normal, and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will signal the driver if pressure falls below the warning limit for any reason, including the effects of low temperature and normal loss of pressure from the tire.

The TPMS will stop indicating insufficient tire pressure when pressure is equal to or greater than the prescribed cold inflation level. Therefore, if insufficient tire pressure is indicated by the ( ) warning light displaying in the instrument cluster, increase the inflation pressure up to the prescribed cold inflation value.

The system will automatically update, and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring

Warning Light" will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

Operating Example

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 33 psi (227 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C), and the measured tire pressure is 28 psi (193 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 24 psi (165 kPa). This tire pressure is low enough to turn on the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light." Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 28 psi (193 kPa), but the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light" will still be on. In this situation, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light" will turn off only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value.

Caution!

❒ *The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. The TPM sensor is not designed for use on aftermarket wheels and may contribute to a poor overall system performance or sensor damage. Customers are encouraged to use OEM wheels to assure proper TPM feature operation.*

❒ *Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.*

❒ *After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.*

INSUFFICIENT TIRE PRESSURE INDICATION

If an insufficient pressure value is detected on one or more tires, the (!) warning light in the instrument cluster will display alongside the dedicated messages, the system will highlight the tire or tires with insufficient pressure graphically, and an acoustic signal will be emitted.

In this case, stop the vehicle, check the inflation pressure of each tire, and inflate the necessary tire or tires to the correct cold inflation pressure value, shown on the display or in the dedicated TPMS menu.

TPMS TEMPORARILY DISABLED

TPMS Check Message

When a system fault is detected, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds, and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. If the ignition is cycled, this sequence will repeat, provided that the system fault still exists. The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light" will turn off when the fault condition no longer exists. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

❒ Jamming due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPMS sensors.

❒ Installing some form of aftermarket window tinting that affects radio wave signals.

❒ Packed snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.

❒ Using tire chains on the vehicle.

❒ Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPMS sensors.

After the punctured tire has been repaired with the original tire sealant contained in the TireKit, the previous condition must be restored so that the (!) warning light is off during normal driving.

TPMS Deactivation

The TPMS can be deactivated by replacing all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with wheel and tire assemblies that do not have TPMS Sensors, such as when installing winter wheel and tire assemblies on your vehicle.

To deactivate the TPMS, first replace all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with tires not equipped with Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) Sensors. Then, drive the vehicle for 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h). The TPMS will chime, the "TPMS Warning Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on. The instrument cluster will display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message and then display dashes (--) in place of the pressure values.

Beginning with the next ignition switch cycle, the TPMS will no longer chime or display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message in the instrument cluster. Instead, dashes (--) will remain in place of the pressure values.

To reactivate the TPMS, replace all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with tires equipped with TPM sensors. Then, drive the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h). The TPMS will chime, the "TPM Warning Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then turn off. The instrument cluster will display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message and then display pressure values in place of the dashes. On the next ignition switch cycle the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, as long as no system fault exists.

Note:

❒ The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance, or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.

❒ The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.

❒ Driving on a significantly underinflated tire will cause the tire to overheat, and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

❒ The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Warning Light".

❒ Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference.

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

Occupant Restraint Systems Features

❒ Seat Belt Systems

❒ Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags

❒ Child Restraints

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized dealer.

Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.

2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint (refer to "Child Restraints" in this section for further information).

3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (refer to "Child Restraints" in this section for further information) should be secured in a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.

4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.

5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.

7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the front air bags room to inflate.

8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.

9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, refer to the "Customer Assistance" section for customer service contact information.

Warning!

❒ *Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.*

❒ *Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.*

Seat Belt Systems

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)

Driver and Passenger BeltAlert (if equipped)

BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position.

Initial Indication

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position, a chime will signal for a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

BeltAlert Warning Sequence

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) (the outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

Change of Status

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by your authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

Note:

If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions in your vehicle are equipped with lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

Warning!

❒ *Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.*

❒ *In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.*

❒ *It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.*

❒ *Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.*

❒ *Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly. Occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.*

❒ *Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.*

❒ *Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.*

Warning!

❒ *A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.*

❒ *A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.*

❒ *A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.*

❒ *A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.*

❒ *A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.*

❒ *A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.*

❒ *A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.*

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.

2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.

3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

Seat Belt Latch Plate Inserted Into Seat Belt Buckle

4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.

5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.

6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure

Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.

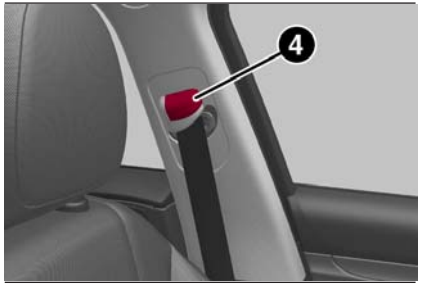
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.

3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.

4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

4 — Adjustable Anchorage

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

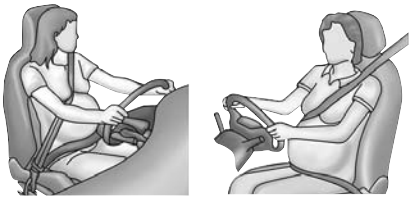
Note:

The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

Warning!

- *Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.*
- *Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.*
- *Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.*

Seat Belts And Pregnant Women



Pregnant Women And Seat Belts

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

Seat Belt Pretensioner

The front seat belt system is equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

Note:

These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

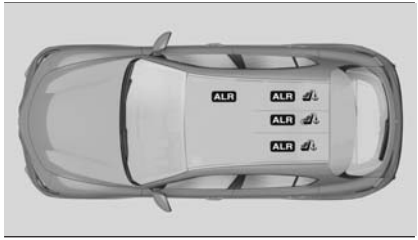
The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

Energy Management Feature

The front seat belt system is equipped with an Energy Management feature that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. The seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt" under the "Child Restraints" section of this manual. The figure below illustrates the locking feature for each seating position.



ALR — Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in a vehicle with a rear seat.

Warning!

❒ *Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.*

❒ *Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.*

How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.

2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.

3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Warning!

❒ *The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.*

❒ *Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.*

❒ *Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.*

Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS)

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized dealer.

The air bag system must be ready to protect you in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with the electrical Air Bag System Components. Your vehicle may be equipped with the following Air Bag System Components:

Air Bag System Components

❒ Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)

❒ Air Bag Warning Light

❒ Steering Wheel and Column

❒ Instrument Panel

❒ Knee Impact Bolsters

❒ Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags

❒ Seat Belt Buckle Switch

❒ Supplemental Side Air Bags

❒ Supplemental Knee Air Bags

❒ Front and Side Impact Sensors

❒ Seat Belt Pretensioners

❒ Seat Track Position Sensors

Air Bag Warning Light

The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bag system even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

❒ The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position.

❒ The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.

❒ The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

Note:

If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

Warning!

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bag system to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

Redundant Air Bag Warning Light

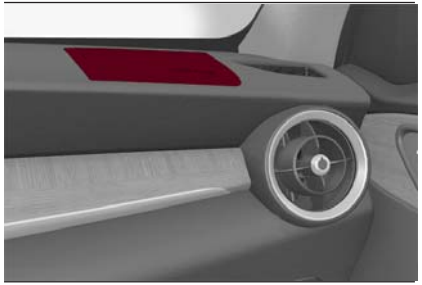
If a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light is detected, which could affect the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS), the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light will illuminate on the instrument panel. The Redundant Air Bag Warning Light will stay on until the fault is cleared. In addition, a single chime will sound to alert you that the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light has come on and a fault has been detected. If the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately. For additional information regarding the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" section of this manual.

Front Air Bags

This vehicle has front air bags and lap/shoulder belts for both the driver and front passenger. The front air bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver front air bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger front air bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words "SRS

AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" are embossed on the air bag covers.

Driver Front Air Bag/Knee Bolster Location



Passenger Front Air Bag/Knee Bolster Location

Driver Knee Air Bag Location

Passenger Knee Air Bag Location

Warning!

❒ *Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front air bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.*

❒ *Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.*

❒ *Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.*

Driver And Passenger Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low

energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

This vehicle may be equipped with driver and/or front passenger seat track position sensors that may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags based upon seat position.

Warning!

❒ *No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.*

❒ *Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.*

❒ *Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.*

Front Air Bag Operation

Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Front air bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions. The front air bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, front air bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the front air bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the front air bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The front air bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The front air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the front air bags.

Warning!

❒ *Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.*

❒ *Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.*

Supplemental Knee Air Bags

Supplemental Driver And Front Passenger Knee Air Bags

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Driver Knee Air Bag mounted in the instrument panel below the steering column and a Supplemental Passenger Knee Air Bag mounted in the instrument panel below the glove compartment. The Supplemental Knee Air Bags provide enhanced protection during a frontal impact by working together with the seat belts, pretensioners, and front air bags.

Supplemental Side Air Bags

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs)

This vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs).

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) are located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with a "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" label sewn into the outboard side of the seats.

The SABs may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

Front Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover. The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The SAB moves at a very high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

Warning!

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs)

This vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs).

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) are located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG."

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Location

SABICs may help reduce the risk of head and other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABIC deploys downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain side impact events.

Warning!

❒ *Do not stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.*

❒ *In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.*

Side Impacts

The Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain side impacts. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular impact event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. The side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right-side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the front air bags deploy.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes.

Warning!

❒ *Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the side air bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.*

❒ *Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from an inflating Side Air Bag. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.*

Warning!

❒ *Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.*

❒ *Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.*

❒ *Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.*

Note:

Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

Rollover Events

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events. The ORC determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appropriate. In the event the vehicle experiences a rollover or near rollover event, and deployment of the Side Air Bags is appropriate, the rollover sensing system will also deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

Note:

The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

Air Bag System Components

Note:

The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

❒ Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)

❒ Air Bag Warning Light

❒ Steering Wheel and Column

❒ Instrument Panel

❒ Knee Impact Bolsters

❒ Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags

❒ Seat Belt Buckle Switch

❒ Supplemental Side Air Bags

❒ Supplemental Knee Air Bags

❒ Front and Side Impact Sensors

❒ Seat Belt Pretensioners

❒ Seat Track Position Sensors

If A Deployment Occurs

The front air bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

Note:

Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

❒ The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few

days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.

❒ As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

Warning!

Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.

Note:

❒ Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

❒ After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

❒ Cut off fuel to the engine.

❒ Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the hazard light button is pressed. The hazard lights can be deactivated by pressing the hazard light button.

❒ Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or for 15 minutes from the intervention of the Enhanced Accident Response System.

❒ Unlock the power door locks.

❒ Turn off the Fuel Pump Heater (if equipped).

❒ Turn off the HVAC Blower Motor.

❒ Cut off battery power to the:

- Engine
- Electric power steering
- Brake booster
- Electric park brake
- Automatic transmission gear selector
- Horn
- Front wiper
- Headlamp washer pump

Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure

After the event occurs, when the system is active, a message regarding fuel cutoff is displayed. Turn the ignition switch from ignition AVV/START or MAR/ACC/ON/RUN to ignition STOP/OFF/LOCK. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

Depending on the nature of the event the left and right turn signal lights, located in the instrument panel, may both be blinking and will continue to blink. In order to move your vehicle to the side of the road, you must follow the system reset procedure.

Customer Action	Customer Will See
Note: **Each step MUST BE held for at least two seconds**	
1. Turn ignition STOP/OFF/LOCK. (Turn Signal Must be placed in Neutral State).	
2. Turn ignition MAR/ACC/ON/RUN.	Right turn light BLINKS. Left turn light is OFF.
3. Turn right turn signal switch ON.	Right turn light is ON SOLID. Left turn light BLINKS.
4. Place turn signal in neutral state.	Right turn light is OFF. Left turn light BLINKS.
5. Turn left turn signal switch ON.	Right turn light BLINKS. Left turn light is ON SOLID.
6. Place turn signal in neutral state.	Right turn light BLINKS. Left turn light is OFF.
7. Turn right turn signal switch ON.	Right turn light is ON SOLID. Left turn light BLINKS.
8. Place turn signal in neutral state.	Right turn light is OFF. Left turn light BLINKS.
9. Turn left turn signal switch ON.	Right turn light is ON SOLID. Left turn light is ON SOLID.
10. Turn left turn signal switch OFF. (Turn Signal Switch Must be placed in Neutral State).	Right turn light is OFF. Left turn light is OFF.
11. Turn ignition STOP/OFF/LOCK.	
12. Turn ignition MAR/ACC/ON/RUN. (Entire sequence needs to be completed within one minute or sequence will need to be repeated).	System is now reset and the engine may be started.
Turn hazard flashers OFF (Manually).	

If a reset procedure step is not completed within 60 seconds, then the turn signal lights will blink and the reset procedure must be performed again in order to be successful.

Maintaining Your Air Bag System

Warning!

❒ *Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.*

❒ *It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.*

❒ *Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to your authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.*

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

❒ How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

❒ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;

❒ How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,

❒ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note:

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Child Restraints

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics,

children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

Warning!

In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured or killed. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

Note:

❒ For additional information, refer to www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm or call 1–888–327–4236.

❒ Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm

Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles

	Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age	Recommended Type Of Child Restraint
Infants and Toddlers	Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint	Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Small Children	Children who are at least two years old or who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint	Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Larger Children	Children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt	Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle
Children Too Large for Child Restraints	Children 12 years old or younger, who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their booster seat	Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle

Infant And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

Warning!

❒ *Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.*

❒ *Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.*

Older Children And Child Restraints

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

Warning!

❒ *Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.*

❒ *After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the child restraint.*

❒ *When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.*

Children Too Large For Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?

2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while the child is still sitting all the way back?

3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not the stomach?

5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was "no," then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position. If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

Warning!

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.

Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

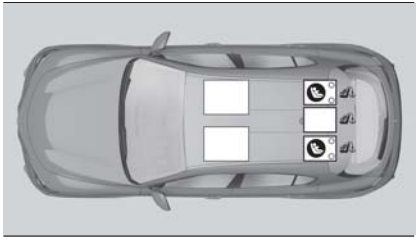
Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use Any Attachment Method Shown With An "X" Below			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)				X

Lower Anchors And Tethers For CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System

LATCH Label

Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



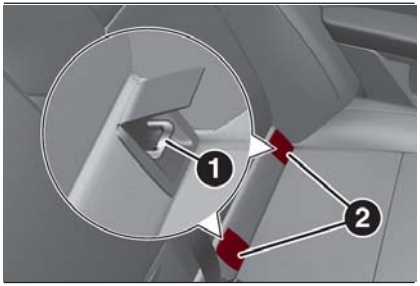
LATCH Positions

- ❒ Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)
- ❒ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint?	65 lbs (29.5 kg)	Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg).
Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint?	No	Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint. Booster seats may be attached to the LATCH anchorages if allowed by the booster seat manufacturer. See your booster seat owner's manual for more information.
Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorage?	No	Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.
Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?	No	Never "share" a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information.
Can the head restraints be removed?	No	

Locating The LATCH Anchorages

The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. Each anchorage is under a cover with the anchorage symbol on it. Lift the cover to access the lower anchorage.

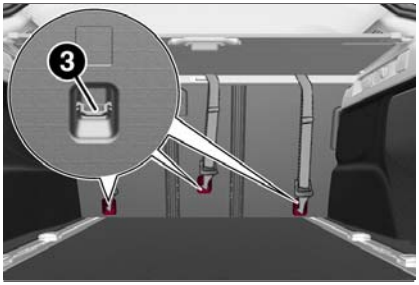


LATCH Anchorage Locations

1 — LATCH Anchorage Bar
2 — LATCH Anchorage Locations

Locating The Upper Tether Anchorages

There are tether strap anchorages behind each rear seating position located on the back of the seat.



Tether Strap Anchorage Locations

3 — Tether Strap Anchorages

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage.
Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

Center Seat LATCH

Warning!

❒ *Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.*

❒ *Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to "To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint" for typical installation instructions.*

Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.

To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt" to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.

2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.

4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.

5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

How To Stow An Unused Switchable-ALR (ALR) Seat Belt:

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child's reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.

Warning!

❒ *Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.*

❒ *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

Warning!

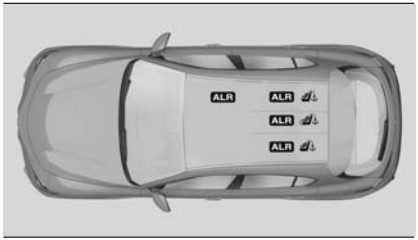
❒ *Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.*

❒ *Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.*

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) that is designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be "switched" into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the "Automatic Locking Mode" description in "Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)" under "Occupant Restraint Systems" for additional information on ALR.

Please see the table below and the following sections for more information.

Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint?	Weight limit of the Child Restraint	Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.
Can the head restraints be removed?	No	
Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?	No	Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor.

Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR):

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

Warning!

❒ *Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.*

❒ *Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.*

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.

3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.

5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.

6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.

7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.

8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.

9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage:

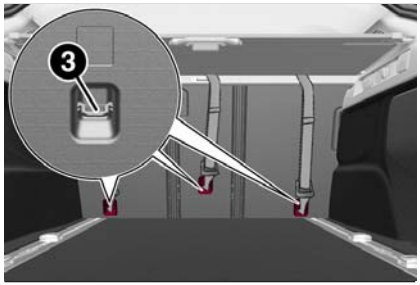
Warning!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section "Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System" for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.

1. Look behind the seating position where you plan to install the child restraint to find the tether anchorage. You may need to move the seat forward to provide better access to the tether anchorage. If there is no top tether anchorage for that seating position, move the child restraint to another position in the vehicle if one is available.

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path for the strap between the anchor and the child seat. If your vehicle is equipped with adjustable rear head restraints, raise the head restraint, and where possible, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the two posts. If not possible, lower the head restraint and pass the tether strap around the outboard side of the head restraint.

3. Attach the tether strap hook of the child restraint to the top tether anchorage as shown in the diagram.



Rear Seat Tether Strap Mounting

3 — Tether Strap Anchorages

4. Remove slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Warning!

❒ *An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.*

❒ *If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.*

Center Tether Special Instructions

Center Tether Attachment:

1. Lower the adjustable center head restraint to the full down position.

2. Route the tether strap over the seatback and head restraint.

3. Attach the tether strap hook of the child restraint to the center tether anchorage located on the back of the seat.

4. Remove slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Transporting Pets

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

SAFETY TIPS

Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

Warning!

❒ *Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.*

❒ *It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.*

❒ *Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.*

❒ *Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.*

Exhaust Gas

Warning!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

❒ *Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.*

❒ *If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.*

❒ *If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.*

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at your authorized dealer as soon as possible. After the bulb check, this light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag System has been detected. It will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have your authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately. Refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information.

Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. Only use a floor mat that does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals. Only use a floor mat that is securely attached using the floor mat fasteners so it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Warning!

An improperly attached, damaged, folded, or stacked floor mat, or damaged floor mat fasteners may cause your floor mat to interfere with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and cause a loss of vehicle control. To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- *ALWAYS securely attach your floor mat using the floor mat fasteners. DO NOT install your floor mat upside down or turn your floor mat over. Lightly pull to confirm mat is secured using the floor mat fasteners on a regular basis.*
- *ALWAYS REMOVE THE EXISTING FLOOR MAT FROM THE VEHICLE before installing any other floor mat. NEVER install or stack an additional floor mat on top of an existing floor mat.*
- *ONLY install floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. NEVER install a floor mat that cannot be properly attached and secured to your vehicle. If a floor mat needs to be replaced, only use a FCA approved floor mat for the specific make, model, and year of your vehicle.*
- *ONLY use the driver's side floor mat on the driver's side floor area. To check for interference, with the vehicle properly parked with the engine off, fully depress the accelerator, the brake, and the clutch pedal (if present) to check for interference. If your floor mat interferes with the operation of any pedal, or is not secure to the floor, remove the floor mat from the vehicle and place the floor mat in your trunk.*
- *ONLY use the passenger's side floor mat on the passenger's side floor area.*
- *ALWAYS make sure objects cannot fall or slide into the driver's side floor area when the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and could cause a loss of vehicle control.*

❒ *NEVER place any objects under the floor mat (e.g., towels, keys, etc.). These objects could change the position of the floor mat and may cause interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals.*

❒ *If the vehicle carpet has been removed and re-installed, always properly attach carpet to the floor and check the floor mat fasteners are secure to the vehicle carpet. Fully depress each pedal to check for interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals then re-install the floor mats.*

❒ *It is recommended to only use mild soap and water to clean your floor mats. After cleaning, always check your floor mat has been properly installed and is secured to your vehicle using the floor mat fasteners by lightly pulling mat.*

Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

Tires

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel nuts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

Lights

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

Fluid Leaks

Check area under the vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.

STARTING AND OPERATING

Let's get to the core of the vehicle, and see how you can explore its fullest potential. We'll look at how to drive safely in any situation, making it a welcome companion with our comfort and wallets in mind.

STARTING THE ENGINE 116
ELECTRIC PARK BRAKE 117
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION. 120
ALFA DNA SELECTOR 123
ALFA ACTIVE SUSPENSION (AAS) — IF EQUIPPED 124
STOP/START SYSTEM 124
SPEED LIMITER 125
ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL (CRUISE CONTROL) 126
ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) — IF EQUIPPED 128
PARK SENSORS SYSTEM 135
REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES 138
LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM 140
REFUELING THE VEHICLE. 141
TRAILER TOWING 143

STARTING THE ENGINE

Before starting the engine, be sure to adjust the seat, the interior rear view mirrors, and the door mirrors, and fasten the seat belt correctly.

Never press the accelerator pedal before starting the engine.

If necessary, messages indicating the starting procedure can be shown in the display.

Warning!

❒ *When leaving the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle.*

❒ *Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.*

❒ *Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.*

❒ *Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.*

❒ *Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.*

Starting Procedure

Proceed as follows:

1. Apply the electric park brake and set the gear selector to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N).

2. Fully depress the brake pedal without touching the accelerator.

3. Briefly push the ignition button.

4. If the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer.

Warning!

❒ *Never pour fuel or other flammable liquid into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in flash fire causing serious personal injury.*

❒ *Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.*

❒ *If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to "Jump Starting" in "In Case Of Emergency" for further information.*

Caution!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not continuously crank the engine for more than 25 seconds at a time. Wait 60 seconds before trying again.

Stopping The Engine

To stop the engine, proceed as follows:

1. Park the vehicle in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic.

2. Engage the PARK (P) mode.

3. With engine idling, push the START/STOP button on the steering wheel to STOP the engine.

Note:

Do not leave the ignition in ON mode when the engine is off.

To shut off the engine with vehicle speed greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), you must push and hold the ignition or push the START/STOP button three times consecutively within a few seconds. The engine will shut down, and the ignition will be placed in the ON mode

ELECTRIC PARK BRAKE

The vehicle is equipped with electric park brake to guarantee better use and optimal performance compared to a manually operated park brake.

The electric parking brake features a switch located on the center console, a motor with caliper for each rear wheel, and an electronic control module.

Electric Park Brake Switch

The electric parking brake can be engaged in two ways:

❒ Manually, by pulling the switch on the center console.

❒ Automatically, in "Safe Hold" or "Auto Park Brake" conditions.

Note:

Normally, the electric parking brake is engaged automatically when the engine is stopped. This function can be deactivated/activated on the Information and Entertainment system by selecting the following items in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Driver Assistance" and "Automatic Parking Brake".

In addition to engaging the electric park brake, along with steering and positioning chocks in front of the wheels (when on a steep slope), you must always place the vehicle in the PARK (P) mode before leaving.

Should the vehicle battery be faulty, the battery must be replaced in order to unlock the electric park brake.

Engaging The Park Brake Manually

Briefly pull the switch located on the center console to manually engage the electric park brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle when engaging the electric parking brake.

A slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected when engaging the electric parking brake with the brake pedal pressed.

With the electric parking brake engaged, the BRAKE warning light on the instrument panel and the switch will illuminate.

Caution!

With the Electronic Parking Brake failure warning light on, some functions of the electric parking brake are deactivated. In this case the driver is responsible for brake activation and vehicle parking in complete safety conditions.

If, under exceptional circumstances, the use of the brake is required with the vehicle in motion, keep the switch on the center console pulled as long as the brake action is necessary.

The BRAKE warning light may turn on with the hydraulic system temporarily unavailable; in this case, braking is controlled by the motors.

The brake lights will also automatically turn on in the same way as normal braking with the use of the brake pedal.

Release the switch on the center console to stop the braking action with the vehicle in motion.

If, through this procedure, the vehicle is braked until a speed below 1.9 mph (3 km/h) is reached and the switch is kept pulled, the park brake will definitively engage.

Note:

Driving the vehicle with the electric parking brake engaged, or using it several times to slow down the vehicle, may cause severe damage to the braking system.

Disengaging The Electric Park Brake Manually

In order to manually release the park brake, the ignition should be in the ON mode. Press the brake pedal, and then push the switch on the center console briefly.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle, and a slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected during disengagement.

After disengaging the electric parking brake, the BRAKE warning light on the instrument panel and the light on the switch will turn off.

If the BRAKE warning light on the instrument panel remains on with the electric parking brake disengaged, this indicates a fault: in this case, contact an authorized dealer.

Warning!

❒ *Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.*

❒ *Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the park brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.*

❒ *Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle or in a location accessible to children. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.*

❒ *Be sure the park brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.*

❒ *Always fully apply the park brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury.*

Note:

Always engage the electric parking brake when parking the vehicle to prevent injury or damage caused by the unexpected movement of the vehicle.

Note:

Never use gear position PARK (P) instead of the electric parking brake.

Electric Park Brake Operating Modes

The electric park brake may operate as follows:

❒ "Dynamic Operating Mode": this mode is activated by pulling the switch repeatedly while driving.

❒ "Static Engagement and Release Mode": with the vehicle stationary, the electric park brake can be activated by pulling the switch on the center console once. Push the switch and the brake pedal at the same time to disengage the brake.

❒ "Drive Away Release" — if equipped: the electric park brake will automatically disengage with the driver side seat belt fastened and the detection of an action performed by the driver to move the vehicle (DRIVE [D] or REVERSE [R]).

❒ "Safe Hold": if the vehicle speed is lower than 1.9 mph (3 km/h), the gear selector is not in PARK (P) position and the driver's intention of leaving the vehicle is detected, the electric park brake will automatically engage to hold the vehicle in safety conditions.

❒ "Auto Park Brake": if the vehicle speed is below 1.9 mph (3 km/h), the electric park brake will automatically engage when the gear selector is in PARK (P) position. The light on the switch located on the center console switches on together with the BRAKE warning light on the instrument panel when the park brake is engaged and applied to the wheels. Each automatic park brake engagement can be cancelled by pressing the switch on the center console and at the same time moving the gear selector for the transmission to position PARK (P).

Safe Hold

Safe Hold is a safety function that automatically engages the electric park brake in the event of a dangerous condition for the vehicle.

The electric park brake engages automatically to prevent vehicle movement if:

❒ The vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h).

❒ A transmission operating mode different from PARK (P) is activated.

❒ The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

❒ The driver side door is open.

❒ No attempts to apply pressure on the brake pedal have been detected.

The "Safe Hold" function can be temporarily disabled by pressing the EPB switch located on the center console and the brake pedal at the same time, with the vehicle stationary and the driver side door open.

Once disabled, the function will activate again when the vehicle speed reaches 12 mph (20 km/h) or the ignition is cycled to STOP and then to ON.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled 8-speed automatic transmission.

The transmission can operate in two different modes: "Automatic" or "Sequential".

Warning!

❒ *It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.*

❒ *Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the park brake, shift the transmission into PARK, and turn the ignition STOP/OFF. When the ignition is in the STOP/OFF mode, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.*

❒ *When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the STOP/OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.*

❒ *Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.*

❒ *Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition in the AVV or ON mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.*

Caution!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

❒ *Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.*

❒ *Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.*

❒ *Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.*

Gear Selector

The gear functioning is controlled by the gear selector, which can assume the following positions:

❒ **P** = PARK
❒ **R** = REVERSE
❒ **N** = NEUTRAL
❒ **D** = DRIVE (automatic forward speed)
❒ **AutoStick**: + manually shift to higher gear; – manually shift to lower gear

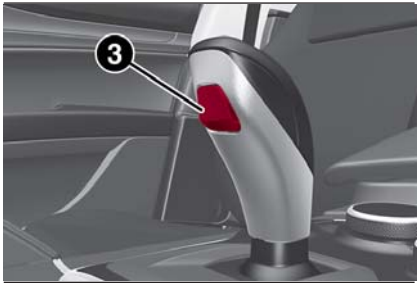
The positions diagram is illustrated on the top of the gear selector.

Gear Selector Center Console

1 — Gear Selector
2 — PARK (P) Button

The letter corresponding to the mode selected on the gear selector lights up and appears on the instrument cluster display.

To select a mode, move the gear selector forward or rearward while pressing the brake pedal. To engage REVERSE (R), press the brake pedal together with the gear selector button.



Gear Selector

3 — Gear Selector Button

The gear selector is a joystick style shifting mechanism which returns to the center position automatically. It can be pushed forward twice and rearward twice, based on the starting condition.

The PARK (P) mode can be enabled/disabled by pushing the PARK (P) button. PARK (P) mode is automatically activated if the following conditions are met simultaneously:

❒ DRIVE (D) mode or REVERSE (R) mode is active

❒ The vehicle's speed is close to 0 mph (0 km/h)

❒ The brake pedal is released

❒ The driver's seat belt is not fastened

❒ The driver's door is open

To transition the vehicle into REVERSE (R) mode from DRIVE (D) mode, or into DRIVE (D) mode from REVERSE (R) mode, it is necessary to move the gear selector by pushing the gear selector button.

When using AutoStick, activate it by moving the gear selector from DRIVE (D) to the left and then forward toward the - symbol or backward toward the + symbol and the gear is changed.

To shift out of PARK (P), or to pass from position NEUTRAL (N) to position DRIVE (D) or REVERSE (R), the vehicle must be moving at a low speed or stopped, and the brake pedal must also be pressed.

Note:

❒ DO NOT accelerate while shifting from position PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) to another position.

❒ After selecting a gear, wait a few seconds before accelerating. This precaution is particularly important with engine cold.

❒ It is not possible to select NEUTRAL (N) mode from PARK (P) mode.

Transmission Operating Modes

AutoStick

In the case of frequent shifting (e.g. for sport driving, when the vehicle is driven with a heavy load, on slopes, when towing heavy trailers), it is recommended to use the Autostick (sequential shifting) mode to select and keep a lower fixed ratio.

In these conditions, the use of a lower gear improves vehicle performance and prevents overheating.

It is possible to shift from DRIVE (D) mode to sequential mode regardless of vehicle speed.

Activation

Starting from DRIVE (D) mode, to activate the sequential drive mode, move the gear selector to the left (– and + indication of the trim). The gear engaged will be shown on the display.

Shifting is made by moving the gear selector forwards, towards symbol – or backwards, towards symbol +.

Steering Wheel Shift Paddles — If Equipped

The gear can be manually shifted also by using the paddles behind the steering wheel, pull the right paddle (+) towards the steering wheel and release it to engage a higher gear, perform the same operation with the left paddle (-) to engage a lower gear.

Steering Wheel Shift Paddles

Note:

If only one manual shift is necessary, the letter (D) will remain on the display with the engaged gear next to it.

Deactivation

To deactivate the sequential driving mode, bring the gear selector back in position DRIVE (D) ("automatic" driving mode).

Warning!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

Note:

❒ To select the correct gear for maximum deceleration (engine brake), just keep the gear paddle pulled (–): the transmission goes to an operating mode in which the vehicle can slow down easily.

❒ The vehicle will keep the gear selected by the driver until the safety conditions allow it.

❒ This means, for example, that the system will try to prevent the engine from switching off, automatically downshifting if the engine speed is too low.

Automatic Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated.

In this condition, the transmission stays in fourth gear, regardless of the selected gear. Positions PARK (P), REVERSE (R) and NEUTRAL (N) still work.

The symbol might light up in the instrument cluster.

Temporary failure

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK (P), if possible. If not, shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
3. Push and hold the ignition until the engine turns OFF.
4. Wait for about 10 seconds, then restart the engine.
5. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

Note:

Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to determine if the problem could reoccur. If the transmission cannot be reset, service is required at your authorized dealer.

ALFA DNA SELECTOR

Alfa DNA System

This vehicle is equipped with a Alfa DNA system selector (located on the center console). There are up to four modes of operation to be selected according to driving style and road conditions:

Alfa DNA System Selector

❒ d = Dynamic (sports driving mode)
❒ n = Natural (mode for driving in normal conditions)
❒ a = Advanced Efficiency (ECO driving mode for maximum fuel savings).
❒ = Adjusts the calibration of the suspensions (if equipped).

On the instrument panel display, the different modes are characterized by different colors:
❒ Natural - Blue
❒ Dynamic - Red
❒ Advanced Efficiency - Green

Mode Display

The different driving modes are graphically different from the color of the frames and the contents only on the "performance" screens.

Driving Modes

"Natural" Mode

Activation/Deactivation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "n"; the display will light up in blue.

To deactivate the Natural mode, move the selector to another mode ("d" or "a").

"Dynamic" Mode

Activation/Deactivation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "d"; the display will light up in red.

To deactivate the Dynamic mode, move the selector to "n", Natural mode.

"Advanced Efficiency" Mode

Activation/Deactivation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "a"; the display will light up in green.

To deactivate the Advanced Efficiency mode, move the selector to "n": Natural mode.

Note:

❒ The next time that the engine is started, the "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" and "Natural" mode selected previously is retained. The system will reactivate in "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" or "Natural" mode, depending on which mode was selected before the engine was stopped.
❒ It is not possible to go directly from "Dynamic" mode to "Advanced Efficiency" mode and vice versa. You must always activate the "Natural" mode first and then select the other mode.

ALFA ACTIVE SUSPENSION (AAS) — IF EQUIPPED

The vehicle's electronic suspensions management system is the result of a sophisticated elaboration of the various board sensors, aimed at optimizing the vehicle's performance.

The system continuously monitors the damping of the suspensions through the actuator installed on each shock absorber. This way, the calibration of the shock absorbers can be adjusted to the conditions of the road surface and to the dynamic conditions of the vehicle, improving its comfort and road holding.

The driver can choose, even while driving, (only in "Dynamic" mode), between two types of suspension calibration: a more sporty or a more comfortable one.

By pushing the button, the system prepares to work with a shock absorber calibration which favours driving comfort.

Alfa Active Suspension Button

In case of a system failure, the symbol ! and a dedicated message will be shown on the instrument panel display.

STOP/START SYSTEM

The Stop/Start system automatically shuts off the engine during a vehicle stop if the required conditions are met. Releasing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal will automatically restart the engine.

The function was developed to increase vehicle efficiency by reducing fuel consumption, gas emissions, and sound pollution.

Note:

When the Stop/Start system stops the engine, the power steering is also disabled.

Operating Mode

Stopping The Engine

With the vehicle at a standstill and brake pedal pressed, the engine switches off if the gear selector is in a position other than REVERSE (R).

The system does not operate when the gear selector is in REVERSE (R), in order to make parking maneuvers easier.

In the event of stops uphill, engine switching off is disabled to make the "Hill Start Assist" function available (works only with running engine).

Note:

The engine can only be automatically stopped after having run at about 6 mph (10 km/h). After an automatic restart, the vehicle only needs to exceed a speed of 0.3 mph (0.5 km/h) to stop the engine.

Engine stopping is signaled by the Ⓐ symbol lighting up on the instrument cluster display.

Restarting The Engine

To restart the engine, release the brake pedal.

With brake pressed, if the gear selector is in automatic mode - DRIVE (D) - the engine can be restarted by moving the gear selector to REVERSE (R) or NEUTRAL (N) or "AutoStick".

With brake pressed, if the gear selector is in "AutoStick" mode, the engine can be restarted by moving the gear selector to "+" or "–", or REVERSE (R) or NEUTRAL (N).

When the engine has been stopped automatically, keeping the brake pedal pressed, the brake can be released keeping the engine off by quickly shifting the gear selector to PARK (P).

To restart the engine, just move the gear selector out of a position other than PARK (P).

System Manual Activation/ Deactivation

To manually activate/deactivate the system, push the button located in the control panel on the left of the steering wheel.

Stop/Start On/Off Button

- ❒ Light off: system activated.
- ❒ Light on: system deactivated.

SPEED LIMITER

Description

This feature allows the speed of the vehicle to be limited to speeds, which can be set by the driver.

The maximum speed can be set with the vehicle stationary or in motion. The minimum speed that can be set is 18 mph (30mk/h).

When this feature is active, the vehicle speed depends on the pressing of the accelerator pedal until the programmed speed limit is reached (see "Speed Limit Programming" paragraph).

Activating The Device

The feature can be activated/ deactivated through the Information and Entertainment System.

Activating The Device

To access this feature on the main menu, select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", “Speed Limiter” and “ON”.

The activation of this feature is signaled by the displaying of the green symbol along with the last speed set.

Speed Limit Programming

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Speed Limiter Set Speed".

By turning the Rotary Pad, the speed increases by 5 mph (5 km/h), from a minimum of 18 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 112 mph (180 km/h).

Deactivating The Device

Deactivating The Device

To access this feature on the main menu, select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Speed Limiter" and "OFF".

Automatic Deactivation Of The Device

The device deactivates automatically in the event of fault in the system. In this case, contact an authorized dealer.

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL (CRUISE CONTROL)

Electronic Speed Control Description

This is an electronically controlled driving assistance feature that allows the desired vehicle speed to be maintained, without having to press the accelerator pedal. This feature can be used at a speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) on long stretches of dry, straight roads with few variations (highways).

The speed control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

Note:

❒ To ensure correct operation, the speed control is designed to deactivate if more than one function is operated simultaneously. In this case, the system can be reactivated by pushing the on/off button and setting the desired speed.

❒ It is not recommended to use this feature in city traffic.

❒ While driving downhill, the system could brake the vehicle to keep the set speed the same.

Warning!

Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

To Activate

To activate the Electronic Speed Control System, push the on/off button located on the left side of the steering wheel.

Electronic Speed Control On/Off Button

The activation of the system is signaled by the white warning light illuminating in the instrument cluster display.

The Electronic Speed Control function can remain active at the same time as the Speed Limiter System. If a speed limit below the one indicated in the set speed control is set, the speed control speed will be lowered to that of the Speed Limiter.

Warning!

Leaving the Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you are not using it.

Setting The Desired Speed

To set a desired speed, proceed as follows:

1. Turn the Electronic Speed Control on.

2. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET switch up or down and release to activate. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will maintain the selected speed automatically.

If needed (when overtaking for instance), you can accelerate beyond the set speed by pressing the accelerator. When you release the pedal, the vehicle goes back to the previously set speed.

When traveling downhill with the system active, the vehicle speed may slightly exceed the set one.

Note:

Before pushing the SET switch, the vehicle must be traveling at a constant speed on a flat surface.

To Vary The Speed Setting

Increasing Speed

Once the Electronic Speed Control has been activated, the speed can be increased by pushing the SET switch upward.

By keeping the switch pushed, the set speed will increase until the button is released. The new speed will then be set.

At every movement of the SET switch, the set speed will be adjusted.

Decreasing Speed

When the system is active, to reduce the speed, push the SET switch downward.

By keeping the switch pushed, the set speed will decrease until the button is released. The new speed will then be set.

At every movement of the SET switch, the set speed will be adjusted.

Note:

Moving the SET switch allows the driver to adjust the speed according to the selected unit of measurement set in the Information and Entertainment System (see dedicated supplement).

Accelerating When Overtaking

Press the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

Use Of The Feature On Hilly Routes

The vehicle can automatically downshift to keep the set speed when driving on hilly routes.

On steep grades, the loss or gain in speed may be considerable and is advisable to deactivate the Electronic Speed Control system.

Note:

The system keeps the speed set even uphill and downhill. A slight variation in the speed on slight elevations is completely normal.

To Resume The Speed

Note:

Before returning to the previously set speed, you must accelerate to a speed close to the set speed, then push and release the RES button.

To Deactivate

Lightly pressing the brake pedal deactivates the speed control without deleting the set speed.

The speed control may also be deactivated by applying the electric park brake or when the braking system is operated (e.g. operation of the ESC system).

The set speed is deleted in the following cases:

❒ Pushing the on/off button twice

❒ The ignition is cycled to the STOP position

❒ There is a malfunction with the Electronic Speed Control.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) — IF EQUIPPED

System Description

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is a driver assist system that combines the speed control functions with maintaining the distance from the vehicle ahead.

The system allows to set and hold the vehicle at the desired speed without needing to press the accelerator. It also allows to set and hold a distance from the vehicle ahead (these settings are set by the driver).

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system uses a radar sensor located behind the front bumper and a camera located in the center/upper part of the windshield, to detect the presence of a vehicle close ahead.

Front Bumper Radar Location

Windshield Camera Location

This system enhances driving comfort while on the highway or out of town with light traffic.

If the sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead, the system will maintain a fixed set speed.

If the sensor detects a vehicle ahead, the system automatically intervenes by braking (or accelerating) slightly in order keep the set distance while not exceeding the original set speed, seeking to adapt to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Note:

Adaptive Cruise Control performance is not guaranteed under the following circumstances, and it is recommended to disable the system under the following cirumstances:

❒ Driving in fog, heavy rain, or snow

❒ Driving in heavy traffic or construction zones

❒ Driving on icy, snowy, slippery roads, roads with steep climbs and descents, or roads with numerous turns and bends

❒ Entering a turn lane

❒ Towing a trailer

❒ When circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed

Warning!

❒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is a convenience system. It is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive of road, traffic, and weather conditions, vehicle speed, distance to the vehicle ahead; and, most importantly, brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.*

❒ *The ACC system:*

- *Does not react to pedestrians, oncoming vehicles, and stationary objects (e.g., a stopped vehicle in a traffic jam or a disabled vehicle).*
- *Cannot take street, traffic, and weather conditions into account, and may be limited upon adverse sight distance conditions.*
- *Does not always fully recognize complex driving conditions, which can result in wrong or missing distance warnings.*
- *Will bring the vehicle to a complete stop while following a target vehicle and hold the vehicle for approximately 3 minutes in the stop position. If the target vehicle does not start moving within 3 minutes the parking brake will be activated, and the ACC system will be canceled.*

You should switch off the ACC system:

❒ *When driving in fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, sleet, heavy traffic, and complex driving situations (i.e., in highway construction zones).*

❒ *When entering a turn lane or highway off ramp; when driving on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, slippery, or have steep uphill or downhill slopes.*

❒ *When circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.*

Activation/Deactivation

The system has four operating states:

❒ Enabled (speed not set)

❒ Activated (speed set)

❒ Paused

❒ Deactivated

Enabling / Activation

To enable the system, push and release the (on/off) button located on the left side of the steering wheel.

On/Off Button

When the system is enabled and ready to operate, the display shows a white vehicle icon above dashes in place of the speed.

Enabled Icons

Setting a speed activates the system. The display shows the icon in green with the set speed.

Warning!

Leaving the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have a collision. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.

Pausing / Deactivating

With the system enabled (speed not set), push the (on/off) button to disable.

With the system active (speed set), push the (on/off) button to pause. The display will show the icon in white with the speed in brackets. To then deactivate the system, push the (on/off) button again.

Setting The Desired Speed

The speed can be set from a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

When the vehicle reaches the desired speed, push the SET switch upward or downward and release it to activate the system. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will maintain the set speed automatically.

SET Switch

While the accelerator pedal is pressed, the system will not be able to control the distance between the vehicle and the one ahead. In this case, the speed will be determined only by the position of the accelerator pedal.

The system will return to normal operation as soon as the accelerator pedal is released.

The system **cannot** be set:

- When pressing the brake pedal
- When the brakes are overheated
- When the electric park brake has been operated
- When either PARK (P), REVERSE (R) or NEUTRAL (N) is engaged
- When the engine rpm is above a maximum threshold

❒ When the vehicle speed is not within the operational speed range

❒ When the ESC (or ABS or other stability control systems) are operating or have just operated

❒ When the ESC system is off

❒ When the Forward Collision Warning system (if equipped) is braking automatically

❒ In the event of system failure

❒ When the engine is OFF

❒ In case of obstruction of the radar sensor (in this case the bumper area where it is located must be cleaned)

If the system is set, the conditions described above also cause a cancellation or deactivation of the system. These situations may vary according to the conditions.

Note:

The system will not be deactivated when speeds higher than those set are reached by pressing the accelerator pedal above 110 mph (180 km/h). In these situations, the system may not work correctly and it is recommended to deactivate it.

To Vary The Speed Setting

Increasing Speed

Once the system has been activated, you can increase the speed by lifting the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed increases by 1 mph.

By holding the button up, the set speed will increase in increments of 5 mph until the button is released. Then, the new speed will be set.

Decreasing Speed

Once the system has been activated, you can decrease the speed by lowering the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed decreases by 1 mph.

By holding the button down, the set speed will decrease in increments of 5 mph until the button is released. Then, the new speed will be set.

Note:

❒ Moving the SET switch allows you to adjust the speed according to the selected unit of measurement ("US" or "metric") set on the Information and Entertainment System (see dedicated supplement)

❒ When the unit of measurement is set to metric, holding the SET switch the speed will change in 10 km/h increments

❒ By keeping the accelerator pedal depressed, the vehicle can continue to accelerate beyond the set speed. In this case, use the SET switch to set the speed to the vehicle's current speed

❒ When you push the SET button to reduce the speed, the braking system intervenes automatically if the engine brake does not slow the vehicle down sufficiently to reach the set speed. The device holds the set speed uphill and downhill; however a slight variation is entirely normal, particularly on slight inclines

❒ The transmission could change to a lower gear when driving downhill, or when accelerating. This is normal and necessary to maintain the set speed

❒ The system will disable while driving if the brakes overheat

Accelerating When Overtaking

When driving with ACC activated and following a vehicle, the system will provide an additional acceleration up to the ACC set speed to assist in passing the vehicle. This additional acceleration is triggered when the driver utilizes the left turn signal and will only be active when passing on the left hand side.

The system detects the direction of traffic automatically when the vehicle passes from left-hand traffic to right-hand traffic. In this case, the overtaking assist function is only active when the reference vehicle is overtaken on the right. The additional acceleration

is deactivated when the driver uses the right turn signal and returns to the original lane.

Resuming The Speed

Once the system has been canceled but not deactivated, to resume a previously set speed, simply push the RES button and remove your foot from the accelerator to recall it.

The system will be set to the last stored speed.

RES (Resume) Button

Before returning to the previously set speed, bring the speed close to that speed, then push the RES button and release it.

Warning!

The Resume function should only be used if traffic and road conditions permit. Resuming a set speed that is too high or too low for prevailing traffic and road conditions could cause the vehicle to accelerate or decelerate too sharply for safe operation. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

Setting The Distance Between Vehicles

The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead may be set to one bar (short), two bars (medium), three bars (long), or four bars (maximum).

Distance Icons

The distances from the vehicle ahead are proportional to speed.

The interval of time with relation to the vehicle ahead remains constant and varies from one second (for the short distance one-bar setting) to two seconds (for the maximum distance four-bar setting).

The set distance is shown on the display by a dedicated icon.

The setting is four (maximum) the first time the system is used. After the distance has been modified by the driver, the new distance will be stored also after the system is deactivated and reactivated.

To Decrease The Distance

Push and release the distance button to decrease the distance setting. The distance setting decreases by one bar (shorter) every time the button is pushed.

Distance Button

The set speed is held if there are no vehicles ahead. Once the shortest distance has been selected, the next push of the button will set the maximum distance.

If a slower vehicle is detected in the same lane, the vehicle icon on the display illuminates from grey to white. The system automatically adjusts the vehicle's speed to keep the set distance, independently of the set speed.

The vehicle holds the set distance until:

❒ The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed higher than the set speed.

❒ The vehicle ahead leaves the lane or the detection field of the Adaptive Cruise Control system sensor.

❒ The distance setting is changed.

❒ The Adaptive Cruise Control system is deactivated/paused.

Warning!

❒ The maximum breaking applied by the system is limited. The driver may apply the brakes in all cases if needed.

❒ If the system predicts that the braking level is insufficient to hold the set distance, either "BRAKE!" or a dedicated message is displayed to warn the driver of approaching the vehicle ahead. An acoustic signal is also emitted. In this case, it is advised to brake immediately as necessary to hold a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

❒ The driver is responsible for ensuring that there are no pedestrians, other vehicles or objectives along the direction of the vehicle. Failure to comply with these precautions may cause serious accidents and injuries.

❒ The driver is fully responsible for holding a safe distance from the vehicle ahead respecting the highway code in force in the respective country.

"Stop And Go" Function

The "Stop and Go" feature allows you to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead until the vehicle has completely stopped. It will also restart the vehicle automatically if the vehicle ahead drives away within two seconds, otherwise it is necessary to press the accelerator pedal or push the RES button to restart.

Warning!

When the ACC system is resumed, the driver must ensure that there are no pedestrians, vehicles or objects in the path of the vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated and the set speed is canceled if:

❒ The (on/off) button is pushed (when the system is on or paused).

❒ The ignition is in STOP mode.

The system is canceled (the set speed and distance are stored):

❒ When the system is paused (Refer to the "Activation / Deactivation" section).

❒ When the conditions shown in the "Setting The Desired Speed" section occur.

Limited Operation Warning

If the dedicated message is shown on the display, a condition limiting the Adaptive Cruise Control operation may have occurred.

This could be due to an obstruction of the vehicle's sensor or camera. It could also

be due to a fault in the system. If an obstruction is detected, clean the area of the windshield opposite the interior rear view mirror, where the camera is located, as well as the area of the front bumper where the sensor is located. Then check that the message has disappeared.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, normal operation will resume.

Should the fault persist, contact your authorized dealer.

Precautions While Driving

The system may not work correctly in some driving conditions (see below). The driver must control the vehicle at all times.

Towing A Trailer

Use of this system is not recommended while towing a trailer.

Vehicle Not Aligned

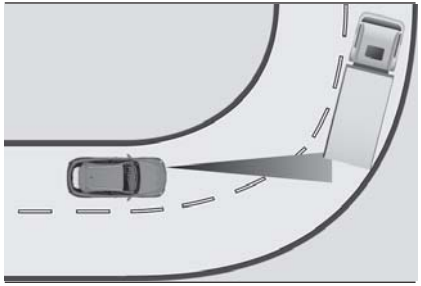
The system may not detect a vehicle traveling in the same lane, in the same direction, but is not aligned. It also may not detect a vehicle which is cutting in from a side lane. Sufficient distance from the vehicles ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

The non-aligned vehicle can weave in and out of the driving lane causing the vehicle to brake or accelerate unexpectedly.

Steering And Curves

Driving on curves with the system set could limit speed and acceleration to guarantee vehicle stability, even if no vehicles are detected ahead.

When leaving the curve, the system resets the previously set speed.



Steering And Curves

Note:

❒ In cases of narrow curves, the performance of the system could be limited. In this case, it is advisable to deactivate the system.

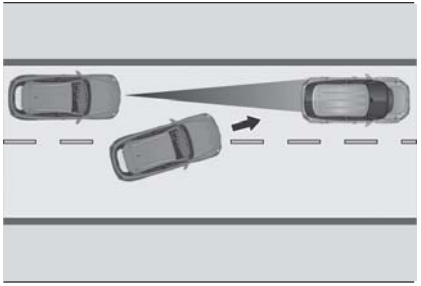
❒ The system only limits the speed DURING a bend and not BEFORE it.

Using The System On Slopes

When driving on roads with a variable incline, the system may not detect the presence of a vehicle in the lane. System performance could be limited according to speed, load, traffic conditions and steep slopes.

Lane Change

The system may not detect the presence of a vehicle until it is fully in your lane.

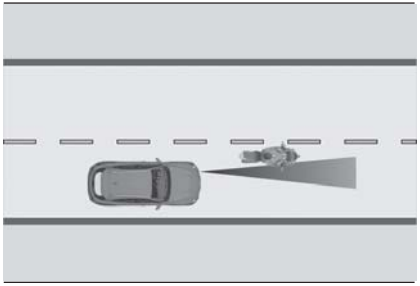


Lane Change

In this case, sufficient distance from the vehicle which is changing lanes may not be guaranteed. It is advisable to pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to apply the brakes if needed.

Small Vehicles

Some narrow vehicles (e.g. bicycles and motorcycles) traveling near the outer edges of the lane or which enter the lane from curb side are not detected until they are fully in the lane.



Small Vehicles

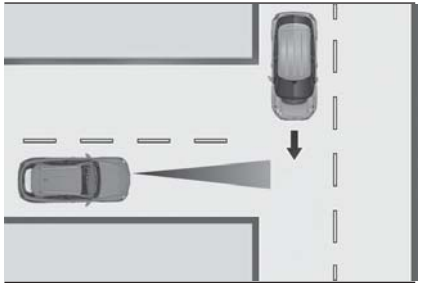
Sufficient distance from the vehicles ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

Stationary Objects And Vehicles

The system cannot detect the presence of stationary vehicles or objects. For example, the system will not operate if the vehicle ahead leaves the lane and a vehicle ahead of that one is stationary in that lane. Pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to apply the brakes if needed.

Objects And Vehicles Moving In Opposite Or Crosswise Direction

The system cannot detect the presence of objects or vehicles traveling in opposite or crosswise directions and consequently will not activate.



Objects And Vehicles Moving In Opposite Or Crosswise Direction

General Information

This vehicle has systems that operate on radio frequency that comply with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.

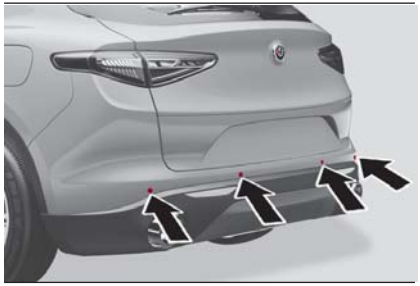
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PARK SENSORS SYSTEM

Vehicles With Rear Parking Sensors Only

The parking sensors, located in the rear bumper, detect obstacles while the vehicle is in REVERSE. When an obstacle is detected, an acoustic alert will sound and visual indications will be displayed on the instrument cluster.



Rear Sensor Locations

System Activation/Deactivation

The system, when engaged, is automatically activated by engaging the REVERSE gear, while it is deactivated by engaging another gear.

To turn the system off, push the Park Sensors System switch located to the left of the headlight switch. The indicator light within the switch will illuminate when the system is turned off. Pushing

the switch a second time will turn the system back on, and the indicator light will turn off.

Park Sensors System On/Off Switch

The indicator light within the Park Sensors System switch will also be on in case of system failure. If the switch is pushed with a system failure, the indicator light will flash for approximately five seconds. The light will then stay on constantly.

Note:

When the ignition is cycled to ON mode, the Park Sensors System keeps the last state when the engine was stopped (activated or deactivated) in its memory.

System Activation/Deactivation

The system, when engaged, is automatically activated by engaging the REVERSE gear. It is deactivated by engaging another gear.

Operation With A Trailer

The operation of the Park Sensors System is automatically deactivated when a trailer's electrical connector is plugged into the vehicle. The sensors are automatically reactivated when the electrical connector is removed.

Warning!

❒ *Before using the Park Sensors System, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.*

❒ *Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the Park Sensors System. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.*

Caution!

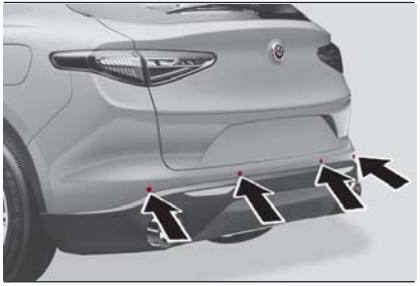
❒ *The Park Sensors System is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.*

❒ *The vehicle must be driven slowly when using the Park Sensors System in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using the Park Sensors System.*

Vehicles With Front And Rear Parking Sensors — If Equipped

The parking sensors, located in the front and rear bumpers, detect the presence of any obstacles and warn the driver through an acoustic signal and visual indications on the instrument cluster.

Front Sensor Locations



Rear Sensor Locations

Engagement/Disengagement

To turn the system off, push the Park Sensors System switch located to the left of the headlight switch. The indicator light within the switch will illuminate when the system is turned off. Pushing the switch a second time will turn the system back on, and the indicator light will turn off.

The indicator light within the Park Sensors System switch will also be on in case of system failure. If the switch is pushed with a system failure, the indicator light will flash for approximately five seconds. The light will then stay on constantly.

Note:

When the ignition is cycled to ON, the Park Sensors system keeps the last state when the engine was stopped (activated or deactivated) in its memory.

System Activation/Deactivation

When the REVERSE gear is engaged and the system is on, the front and rear sensors are activated. If the vehicle moves from REVERSE to a forward gear, the rear sensors are deactivated, while the front sensors remain active until the speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) is exceeded.

Operation With A Trailer

The operation of the rear sensors is automatically deactivated when a trailer's electrical connector is plugged into the vehicle, while the front sensors stay active and can provide acoustic and visual warnings. The rear sensors are automatically reactivated when the electrical connector is removed.

Note:

Some conditions may influence the performance of the Park Sensors System:

❒ Reduced sensor sensitivity could be due to the presence of ice, snow, mud, or thick paint on the surface of the sensor.

❒ The sensors may detect a false obstacle (echo interference) due to mechanical interference, for example when washing the vehicle or in extreme weather.

❒ The signals sent by the sensors can be altered by the presence of ultrasonic systems (e.g. pneumatic brake systems of trucks or pneumatic drills) near the vehicle.

❒ System performance can be influenced by the position of the sensors. For example, due to a change in the ride setting (caused by wear to the shock absorbers or suspension), by changing tires, overloading the vehicle or operations that require the vehicle to be lowered.

❒ Be sure not to place bumper stickers or other adhesives over the sensors as this will affect system performance.

❒ The presence of a trailer hitch without a trailer. This may interfere with the operation of the parking sensors. Before using the Park Sensors System, it is recommended to remove or close the trailer hitch assembly when the vehicle is not being used for towing.

Warning!

❒ Before using the Park Sensors System, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

❒ Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the Park Sensors System. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Caution!

❒ The Park Sensors System is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.

❒ The vehicle must be driven slowly when using the Park Sensors System in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using the Park Sensors System.

REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES

Description

The Rear Back-Up Camera is located on the liftgate, above the rear license plate.

Rear Back-Up Camera Location

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the Information and Entertainment System display will show the area behind the vehicle, as seen by the Rear Back-Up Camera, along with a warning message.

Rear Back-Up Camera Display

Rear Back-Up Camera Features

To activate the Rear Back-Up Camera features, select "Settings" from the Main Menu of the Information and Entertainment System. Under "Driver Assistance", Rear Back-Up Camera features can be selected:

❒ View

❒ Camera Delay

❒ Dynamic Grid Lines

Selecting "View" will activate the camera view on the display.

Selecting "Camera Delay" will allow the camera view to remain on the display shortly after the vehicle is no longer in REVERSE, followed by the previously active screen.

Selecting "Camera Guidelines" will activate the display of the dynamic guidelines that indicate the route of the vehicle.

Warning!

Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the Rear Back Up Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Caution!

❒ *To avoid vehicle damage, Rear Back Up Camera should only be used as a parking aid. The Rear Back Up Camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.*

❒ *To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using the Rear Back Up Camera to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using the Rear Back Up Camera.*

Symbols And Messages On The Display

Indications On The Display

Through the Information and Entertainment System settings, by activating the "Camera Guidelines" feature, guidelines can be seen on the rear camera display. If activated, the guidelines are positioned on the image to highlight the width of the vehicle and the expected reverse path based on the steering wheel position.

A central line indicates the center of the vehicle to assist in rear parking maneuvers or trailer hitch alignment. The various colored areas indicate the distance from the rear of the vehicle.

The table below shows the approximate distances for each area:

Area	Distance From The Rear Of The Vehicle
Red	0–11.8 inches (0–30 cm)
Yellow	11.8 inches to 3.3 feet (30 cm–1 m)
Green	3.3 feet or more (1 m or more)

Messages On The Display

If the liftgate is opened, the camera will not detect any obstacle behind the vehicle. The display will show a dedicated warning message.

Make sure the liftgate is closed by pushing next to the lock until it clicks.

Important Notes

❒ Ice, snow or mud on the surface of the camera may reduce its sensitivity. It is important to keep the camera surface clean, and free from debris.

❒ When parking, be aware of obstacles that may be above or below the camera range.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM

Description

The Lane Departure Warning system uses a forward looking camera located on the windshield to detect lane markings and measure vehicle position within the lane boundaries.

When one or both lane limits are detected and the vehicle passes over one without an activated turn signal, the system emits a visual as well as an acoustic signal.

If the vehicle continues to go beyond the line of the lane without any intervention from the driver, the surpassed line will light up on the display (left or right) to urge the driver to bring the vehicle back into the limits of the lane.

Caution!

❒ *Do not tamper with nor operate on the camera. Do not close the openings in the aesthetic cover located under the interior rear view mirror. In the event of a failure of the camera, contact your authorized dealer.*

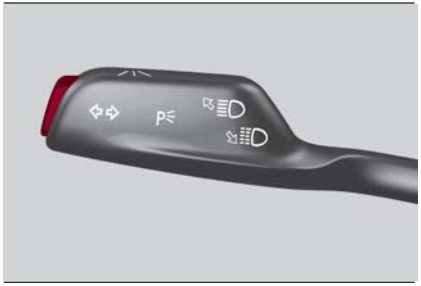
❒ *The camera may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow, formation of ice layers on the windshield.*

❒ *Camera operation may also be compromised by the presence of dust, condensation, dirt or ice on the windshield, by traffic conditions (e.g. vehicles that are driving not aligned with yours, vehicle driving in a transverse or opposite way on the same lane, bend with a small radius of curvature), by road surface conditions and by driving conditions (e.g. off-road driving). Make sure the windshield is always clean. Use specific detergents and clean cloths to avoid scratching the windshield. The camera operation may also be limited or absent in some driving, traffic and road surface conditions.*

❒ *If the windshield must be replaced due to scratches, chipping or breakage, contact exclusively your authorized dealer. Do not replace the windshield on your own. It is advisable to replace the windshield if it is damaged in the area of the camera.*

System Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated/deactivated by pushing the button located on the end of the multifunction lever.



Lane Departure Warning System Activation/Deactivation Button

Note:

When the engine is started, the system maintains the operating mode that was selected when it was turned OFF.

Activation Conditions

Once turned on, the system becomes active only if the following conditions are met:

❒ The vehicle speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).

❒ The lane limit lines are visible at least on one side.

❒ There are suitable visibility conditions.

❒ The road is straight or with wide radius bends.

❒ A suitable distance is kept from the vehicle in front.

❒ The turn signal is not active.

REFUELING THE VEHICLE

Refueling The Vehicle

Before refueling, make sure that the fuel type is correct.

Also, stop the engine before refueling.

Note:

An inefficient catalytic converter leads to harmful exhaust emissions, thus contributing to air pollution.

Caution!

Never introduce leaded fuel to the tank, even in small amounts in an emergency, as this would damage the catalytic converter beyond repair.

Refueling Procedure

The fuel filler door is unlocked when the central door locking system is released, while it is automatically locked when the central locking system is applied.

Opening The Fuel Filler Door

To refuel proceed as follows:

1. Open fuel filler door by pressing on the point shown by the arrow.

Fuel Door

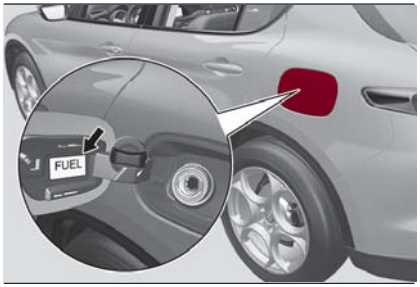
2. Remove the fuel filler cap.

3. Insert the fuel nozzle fully into the filler pipe.

4. When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, before removing the nozzle, wait for at least 10 seconds in order for the fuel to flow inside the tank

5. Remove the fuel filler nozzle, tighten the gas cap about ¼ turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that cap is properly tightened.

The label indicates the fuel type (UNLEADED FUEL = gasoline).



Fuel Door Label

Emergency Fuel Door Opening

In the event of an emergency the fuel filler door can be opened by operating from inside the trunk.

Proceed as follows:

1. Open the liftgate and locate the emergency fuel filler release cap placed on the side of the luggage compartment.

2. Open the cap, and pull the cord inside to unlock the fuel filler door.

3. Open the fuel filler door by pressing on it (see the previous instructions).

Warning!

❒ *Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the fuel door is open or the tank is being filled.*

❒ *Never add fuel when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.*

❒ *A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.*

Note:

If the filler compartment is washed with a pressure washer, keep it at a distance of at least 8 inches (20 cm).

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

Engine/Transmission	Maximum GTW (Gross Trailer Wt.)	Maximum Tongue Wt. (See Note)
2.0L Engine	3,000 lbs (1360 kg)	300 lbs (136 kg)
Refer to local laws for maximum trailer towing speeds.		
NOTE: The trailer tongue weight must be considered as part of the combined weight of occupants and cargo, and should never exceed the weight referenced on the Tire and Loading Information placard.		

This page is intentionally left blank

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Have a flat tire or a burnt-out bulb?

At times, a problem such as these may interfere with your driving experience.

The section on emergencies can help you to deal with critical situations independently.

In an emergency, we recommend that you call the phone number found in the Warranty Book.

You may also consider contacting your nearest authorized dealer.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE 146
HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS 146
BULB REPLACEMENT 147
FUSES 151
JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING 158
TIRE SERVICE KIT — IF EQUIPPED .161
JUMP STARTING 165
TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE . . .167
TOW EYES 169
ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS) 170
EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR) . . .170

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

To contact Alfa Romeo Emergency Roadside Assistance **Dial toll-free 1-844-253-2872 for U.S. Residents.**

❒ Provide your name, vehicle identification number, license plate number, and your location, including the telephone number from which you are calling.

❒ Briefly describe the nature of the problem and answer a few simple questions.

❒ You will be given the name of the service provider and an estimated time of arrival. If you feel you are in an "unsafe situation", please let us know. With your consent, we will contact local police or safety authorities.

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located in the switch bank below the radio screen.

Push the switch once to turn the hazard warning flasher on. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn the hazard warning flashers off.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the hazard warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is cycled to STOP.

Hazard Warning Switch

Caution!

Prolonged use of the hazard warning flashers may discharge the vehicle's battery.

Emergency Braking

The hazard warning lights turn on and warning lights ⇦ and ⇨ illuminate on the instrument panel in case of emergency braking and according to the mode selected by the “Alfa DNA” selector.

When the "Alfa DNA" selector is in position "n" or "a", the activation threshold of the hazard warning lights is higher. While in position "d", the sensitivity of the activation is lower than that in the "n" and "a" modes.

The hazard warning lights turn off automatically when emergency braking deactivates. For further details about the emergency braking, see the "Active Safety Systems" section in the "Safety" chapter.

BULB REPLACEMENT

General Instructions

❒ Before replacing a bulb, check the contacts for oxidation.

❒ Replace blown bulbs with others of the same type and power.

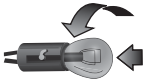
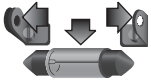
❒ After replacing a headlight bulb, always check its alignment.

❒ When a light is not working, check that the corresponding fuse is intact before changing the bulb. For the location of fuses, refer to “Fuses” in this chapter.

Note:

In some particular climate conditions, such as low temperature, humidity, or after washing the vehicle, a thin condensation layer may form on the internal surfaces of the front and rear headlights. This condensation will disappear after switching on the headlights.

Types Of Bulbs

The vehicle may be equipped with the following bulbs	
Glass Bulbs (Type A): They are press-fitted. Pull to extract.	A
Bayonet-Type Bulbs (Type B): To remove them from their holder, press the bulb and turn it counterclockwise, then extract it.	B 
Tubular Bulbs (Type C): Release them from their contacts to remove.	C 
Halogen Bulbs (Type D): To remove the bulb, turn the connector to the side and pull it out.	D
Halogen Bulbs (Type E): To remove the bulb, turn it counterclockwise.	E
Xenon Gas Discharge Bulb (Type F): to remove the bulb, contact an authorized dealer.	F

Replacement Bulbs

Light bulbs	Type	Power
Front direction indicators (*)	PY24W	24W
Rear Fog lights(*)	H11	55 W
Main beam headlights, front side lights/daylight running lights (DRL) (*)	H15	55/15W
Dipped beam headlights (*)	H7	55W
Main beam/dipped beam headlights (Xenon gas discharge)	D3S	35W
Sun visor light	1.5CP	2.1W
Glove compartment light	W5W	4W
Liftgate light	W5W	5W
Puddle lights (under door panel)	W5W	5W

(*) Only for basic version headlight with halogen main beam/dipped beam headlights

Replacing Exterior Bulbs

Warning!

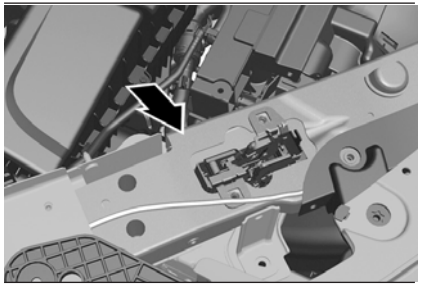
Only replace bulbs when the engine is off. Also ensure that the engine is cold, to prevent the risk of burns.

Front Light Cluster With Halogen Headlights

Main Beam Headlights

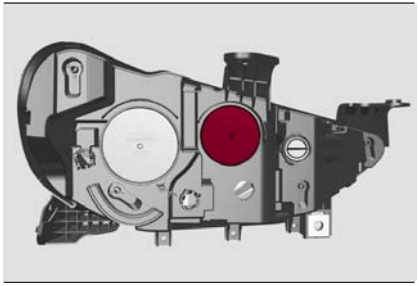
Proceed with the directions below to change bulbs:

1. Operating inside the engine compartment, locate the protective cover.



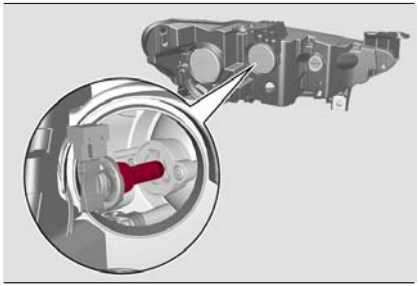
Protective Cover Location

2. Remove protective cover.



Protective Cover

3. Turn the bulb/connector assembly counterclockwise, and then slide it off the headlight body.



Bulb/Connector

4. Remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder.

5. Install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder.

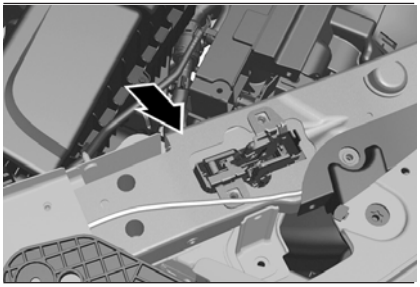
6. Insert the bulb/connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly.

7. Install the protective cover.

Direction Indicators

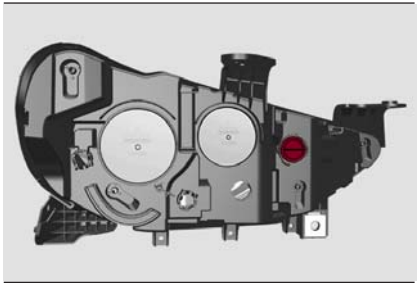
Proceed with the directions below to change bulbs:

1. Operating inside the engine compartment, locate the protective cover.



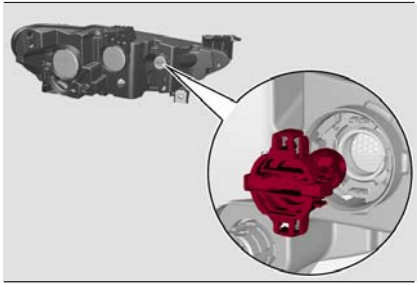
Protective Cover Location

2. Remove protective cover.



Protective Cover

3. Turn the bulb/connector assembly counterclockwise, and then slide it off the headlight body.



Bulb/Connector

4. Remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder.

5. Install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder.

6. Insert the bulb/connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly.

7. Install the protective cover.

Fog Lights

To replace fog light bulbs, contact your authorized dealer.

Front Light Cluster With Main Beam Xenon Gas Discharge Headlights

To replace the bulbs of the main beam headlights, contact your authorized dealer.

Caution!

Do not touch the new bulb with your fingers. Oil contamination will severely shorten bulb life. If the bulb comes in contact with any oily surface, clean the bulb with rubbing alcohol.

FUSES

Introduction

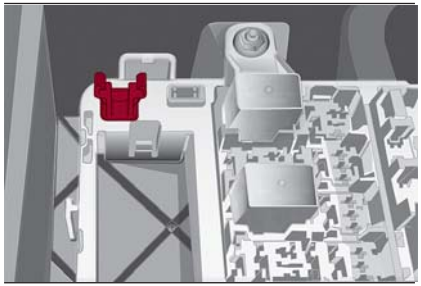
The fuses protect electrical systems against excessive current.

When a device does not work, you must check the electrical circuit inside the fuse for a break/melt.

Also, please be aware that using power outlets for extended periods of time with the engine off may result in vehicle battery discharge.

Fuse Extracting Pliers

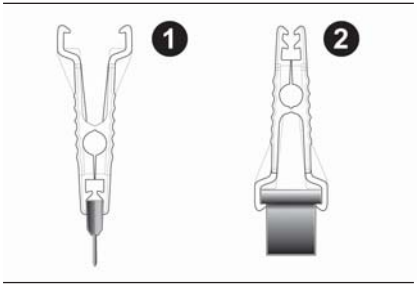
To replace a fuse, use the pliers hooked to the trunk fusebox cover.



Fuse Box

Grab the pliers from the upper tabs, press the tabs together, and extract the pliers pulling upwards.

The pliers have two different ends, both of which are specifically designed to remove the different types of fuses present in the vehicle:



Fuse Extracting Pliers

1 — MINI fuse
2 — J-CASE fuse

After use, return the pliers to their proper position by following the below procedures:

❒ Grasp the pliers from the upper tabs and insert them into their housing.

❒ Push downward on the pliers into their housing until they click into place.

Warning!

❒ *When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.*

❒ *Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.*

❒ *If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.*

❒ *If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.*

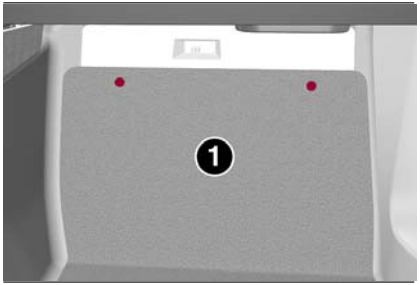
Fuse Location

The fuses, which can be replaced by the user, are grouped in two boxes below the passenger side foot board and inside the luggage compartment.

Control Unit Under Passenger Side Footboard

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:

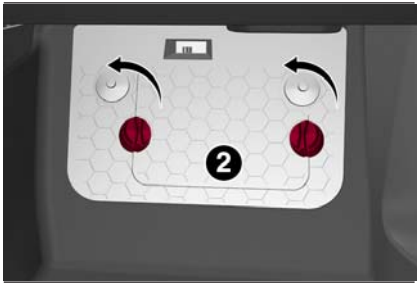
1. Lift the upper end of the footboard on the passenger side, pulling to release the two buttons.



Release Buttons On Footboard

1 — Footboard

2. Unscrew the two hooks, and remove the panel by pulling downward.



Release Hooks On Footboard

2 — Panel

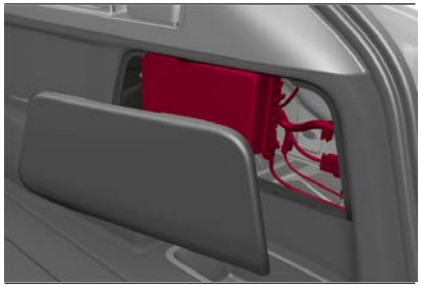
The fuses are freely accessible on the control unit.

After replacing the fuse, make sure that the panel and footboard are correctly locked back into place.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:

1. Lift the luggage compartment cover.
2. Remove the control unit cover.



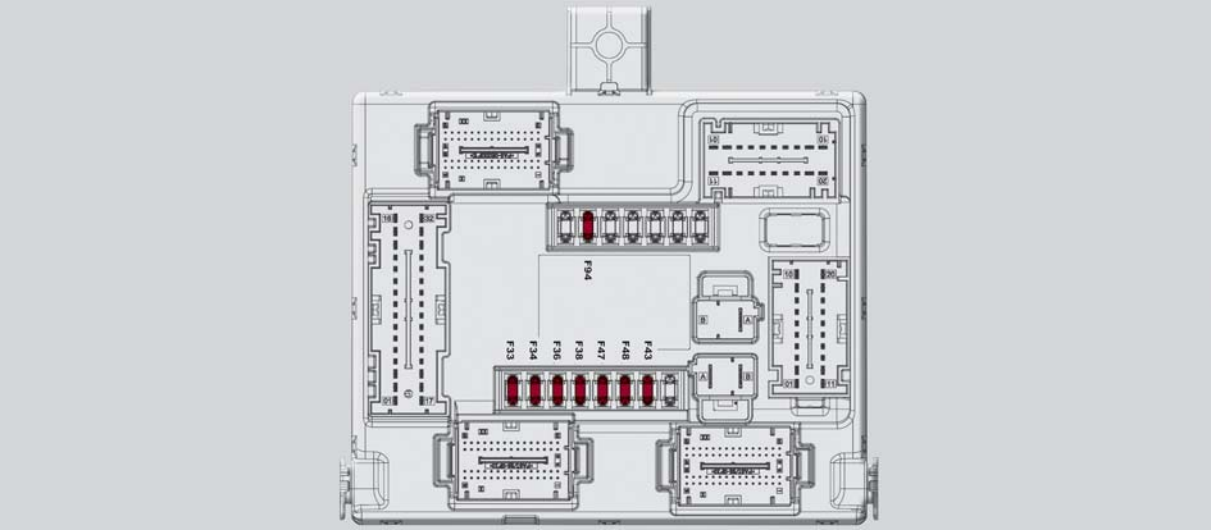
Control Unit

The fuses are freely accessible on the control unit.

The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is shown on the cover.

After replacing a fuse, make sure that you have closed the cover correctly.

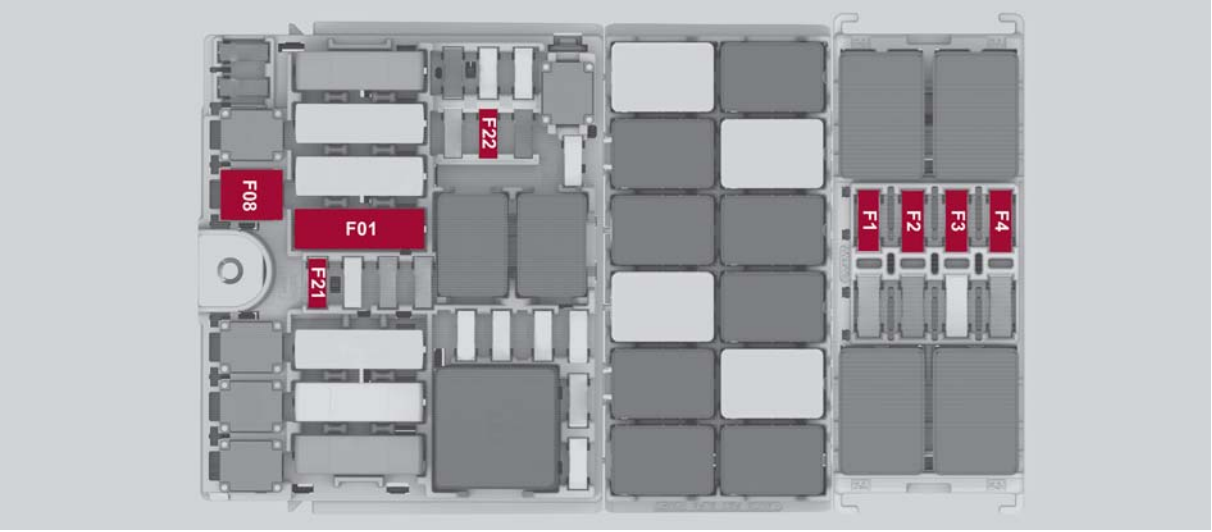
Control Unit Under Passenger Side Footboard



Passenger Side Control Unit

FUNCTION	FUSE	AMPERAGE
Front power window (driver's side)	F33	25
Front power window (passenger side)	F34	25
Supply for Information and Entertainment system, Climate Control system, alarm, power door mirror folding, EOBD system, USB port	F36	15
Safe Lock device (driver side door unlock – if equipped), doors unlock, central lock	F38	20
Windshield washer pump	F43	20
Rear left power window	F47	25
Rear right power window	F48	25
Heater rear window coil	F94	15

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



Luggage Compartment Control Unit

FUNCTION	FUSE	AMPERE
Receiver module (TTM/TTEBM)	F01	40
Hi-Fi system	F08	30
I-Drive / USB Socket / AUX / USB Charger	F21	10
KL15/a 12V Power socket in the luggage compartment	F22	20
Trailer light control unit power supply (+30)	F1	20
Trailer light control unit power supply (+30)	F2	15
Trailer socket (only EMEA) (+30)	F3	10
Tow bar (+15)	F4	10

JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

Warning!

❒ Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

❒ Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.

❒ Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.

❒ The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

General Instructions

This vehicle can be equipped with a Tire Service Kit. Refer to "Tire Service Kit" for further information.

As an alternative to the Tire Service Kit, the vehicle may be purchased with an inflatable spare tire. Refer to "Changing Procedure" for further information.

Jack Information And Usage Precautions

Jack Information

❒ The jack weighs 4.4 lb (2 kg).

❒ The jack requires no adjustment.

❒ The jack cannot be repaired, and in the event of a fault it must be replaced by another factory replacement.

❒ No tool other than its extension lever may be fitted on the jack.

Jack Maintenance

❒ Prevent any dirt from depositing on the "worm screw".

❒ Keep the "worm screw" lubricated.

❒ Never modify the jack.

Conditions Of Non-Use Of The Jack

❒ Temperatures below −40°F (−40°C).

❒ On sandy or muddy ground

❒ On uneven ground

❒ On steep slopes in extreme weather conditions.

❒ In direct contact with the engine or for repairs under the vehicle

❒ On boats

Changing Procedure

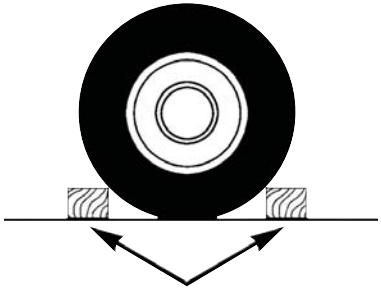
1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

Warning!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Apply the electric park brake.
4. Place the gear selector into PARK.
5. Cycle the ignition to STOP mode.

6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite of the jacking position. For example, if changing the right front tire, block the left rear wheel.

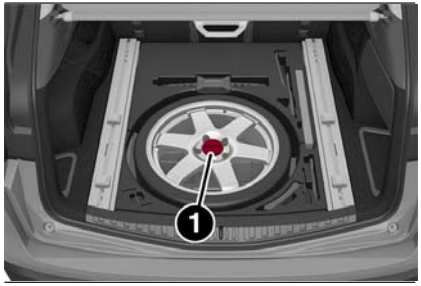


Wheels Blocked

7. Open the liftgate and lift up the load floor using the handle.

8. Take the warning triangle and position it at a suitable distance from the vehicle to warn oncoming vehicles.

9. Unscrew the locking plate and take out the inflatable spare tire and the air compressor.



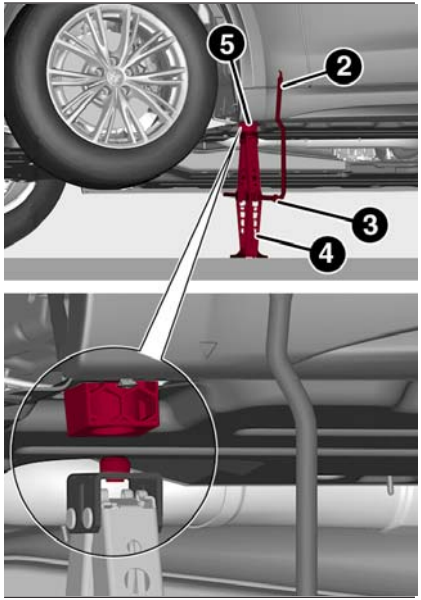
Inflatable Spare Tire — If Equipped

1 — Locking Plate

10. Remove the damaged wheel by using the wheel wrench to loosen the bolts by about one turn.

11. Position the jack under the vehicle, near the wheel to be changed, taking care not to damage the plastic body panel.

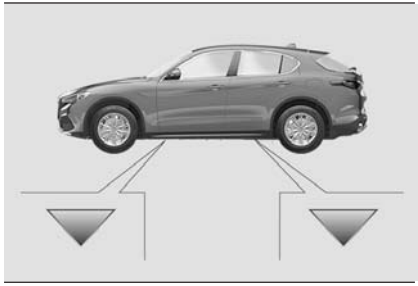
12. Lift the extension lever on the wrench.



Jacking Location

2 — Extension Lever
3 — Wrench Head
4 — Jack
5 — Lifting Block

13. Rotate the extension lever clockwise until the round pin on the jack engages in the hole in the lifting block located about six inches (15 cm) from the outside edge of the body. The lifting points are marked by triangles ▽ visible on the plastic body panel.



Jacking Point Indicators

Caution!

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

14. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack screw clockwise, using the swivel wrench. Raise the vehicle only until the tire just clears the surface and enough clearance is obtained to install the inflatable spare tire. Minimum tire lift provides maximum stability.

Warning!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

15. Remove the five wheel bolts and take the wheel off.

16. Make sure the contact surfaces between inflatable spare tire and hub are clean so that the fastening bolts will not come loose.

17. Fit the inflatable spare tire by inserting the first wheel bolt for two threads into the hole closest to the valve.

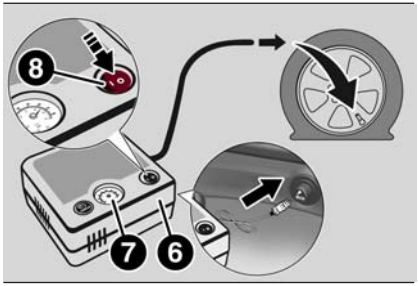
Caution!

Be sure to mount the spare tire with the valve stem facing outward. The vehicle could be damaged if the spare tire is mounted incorrectly.

18. Take the wheel wrench and tighten the wheel bolts.

19. Inflate the inflatable spare tire by removing the cap from its inflation valve and screwing on the compressor inflation hose fitting.

20. Make sure that the switch on the compressor is in the O (off) position, open the liftgate and insert the plug into the power socket in the cargo area, or on the center console and start the engine. Place the on/off switch in the I (on) position.



Attaching Compressor To Tire

6 — Air Compressor
7 — Pressure Gauge
8 — Power Button

21. Inflate the inflatable spare tire to a pressure of 43.5 psi (3 bar).

Note:

If spare tire is over inflated, be sure to lower the psi in the tire to the recommended amount by using the deflation button on the air compressor.

22. Operate the wheel wrench on the jack to lower the vehicle.

23. Remove the jack.

24. Use the wheel wrench to fully tighten the bolts, passing alternately from one bolt to the diagonally opposite one.

Warning!

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the wheel nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury.

To obtain a more accurate reading, it is advisable to check the pressure of the inflatable spare tire on the pressure gauge with the compressor off.

The compressor was designed for inflating the inflatable spare tire. Do not use it for inflating mattresses, rafts, etc.

Note:

Do not stow the deflated tire in the inflatable spare tire location.

Have the full-sized tire repaired or replaced, as soon as possible.

Warning!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

TIRE SERVICE KIT — IF EQUIPPED

Description

If a tire is punctured, you can make a first emergency repair using the Tire Service Kit located in the rear storage area under the load platform.

1. Stop the vehicle in a position where you can repair the tire safely. You should be as far as possible from the side of the road, and in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic. Turn on the hazard warning flashers, remove the safety triangle from the luggage compartment, and place it at a suitable distance from the vehicle to make other drivers aware of your presence.

2. Verify that the valve stem (on the wheel with the deflated tire) is in a position that is near to the ground. This will allow the tire repair kit hoses to reach the valve stem and keep the tire service kit flat on the ground.

3. Place the gear selector to PARK (P).

4. Apply the electric park brake and turn the engine OFF.

To access the Tire Service Kit, open the liftgate and lift the load floor.

Load Floor

The Tire Service Kit consists of:

❒ Sealant cartridge containing the sealing fluid

❒ Filler Tube

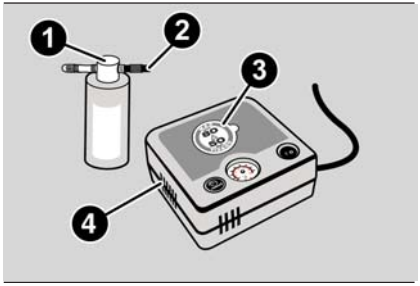
❒ Air compressor, complete with pressure gauge and connectors

❒ Adhesive label with the writing "Max. 50 mph (80 km/h)", to be attached in a position easily visible to the driver (eg. on the dashboard) after repairing the tire

❒ An instruction pamphlet for reference in prompt and correct use of the Tire Service Kit, which must be then given to the personnel dealing with the sealant-treated tire

❒ A pair of protective gloves

❒ Some adaptors, for inflating different elements



Tire Service Kit Components

1 — Sealant Cartridge
2 — Filling Hose
3 — Adhesive Label
4 — Air Compressor

Note:

❒ The sealing fluid is effective with external temperatures of between -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (50°C).

❒ The sealing fluid has an expiration date.

Inflation Procedure

Warning!

❒ *Do not attempt to seal a tire on the side of the vehicle closest to traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when using the Tire Service Kit.*

❒ *Do not use Tire Service Kit or drive the vehicle under the following circumstances:*

- *If the puncture in the tire tread is approximately 1/4 inch (6 mm) or larger.*
- *If the tire has any sidewall damage.*
- *If the tire has any damage from driving with extremely low tire pressure.*
- *If the tire has any damage from driving on a flat tire.*
- *If the wheel has any damage.*
- *If you are unsure of the condition of the tire or the wheel.*

❒ *Keep Tire Service Kit away from open flames or heat sources.*

❒ *A loose Tire Service Kit thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the Tire Service Kit in the place provided. Failure to follow these warnings can result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.*

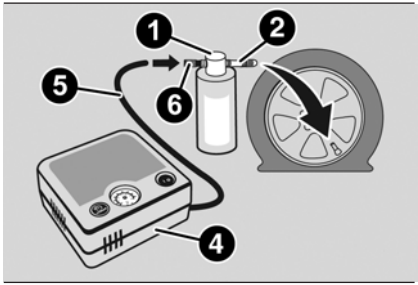
❒ *Take care not to allow the contents of Tire Service Kit to come in contact with hair, eyes, or clothing. Tire Service Kit sealant is harmful if inhaled, swallowed, or absorbed through the skin. It causes skin, eye, and respiratory irritation. Flush immediately with plenty of water if there is any contact with eyes or skin. Change clothing as soon as possible, if there is any contact with clothing.*

❒ *Tire Service Kit Sealant solution contains latex. In case of an allergic reaction or rash, consult a physician immediately. Keep Tire Service Kit out of reach of children. If swallowed, rinse mouth immediately with plenty of water and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting! Consult a physician immediately.*

To use the Tire Service Kit, proceed as follows:

1. Apply the electric park brake.

2. Connect the hose to the sealant cartridge containing the sealing liquid. Unscrew the tire valve cap, take out the filler tube and tighten the fitting on the tire valve.

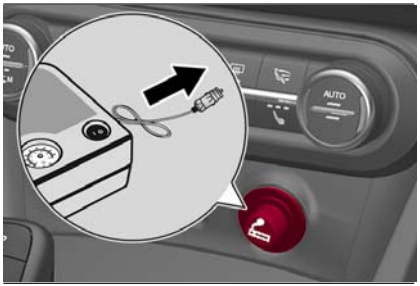


Attaching Filler Tube To Deflated Tire

1 — Sealant Cartridge
2 — Filler Hose
4 — Air Compressor
5 — Hose
6 — Sealant Cartridge Connector

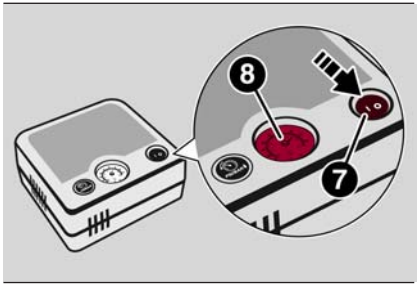
3. Make sure the power switch of the compressor is in the off position (O).

4. Insert the plug into the power outlet in the center console, then start the engine.



Inserting Plug Into Outlet

5. Start the compressor by placing the power switch in the on position (I).



Air Compressor

7 — Power Switch
8 — Pressure Gauge

6. Inflate the tire to a pressure of at least 32 psi (2.2 bar) Refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for more information. In order to obtain a more precise reading, check the pressure value on pressure gauge with the compressor off.

7. If the pressure is not at least 26 psi (1.8 bar) after 15 minutes, disengage the compressor from the valve and power outlet. Then, move the vehicle forwards approximately five tire turns in order to distribute the sealing fluid inside the tire evenly, and then repeat the inflation operation.

8. Drive the vehicle for about 5 miles (8 km), stop, engage the electric park brake, and recheck the tire pressure.

9. If the pressure is less than 19 psi (1.3 bar), **DO NOT** drive the vehicle, and see your authorized dealer.

10. If a pressure value of at least 19 psi (1.3 bar) is detected, restore the correct pressure (with engine running and electric park brake engaged), and drive immediately with great care to your authorized dealer.

Warning!

Tire Service Kit is not a permanent flat tire repair. Have the tire inspected and repaired or replaced after using Tire Service Kit. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) until the tire is repaired or replaced. Failure to follow this warning can result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you. Have the tire checked as soon as possible at your authorized dealer.

11. Apply the adhesive label from the sealant bottle where it can be easily seen by the driver as a reminder that the tire has been treated with a Tire Service Kit, as well as not to exceed the speed restriction for the treated tire.

Warning!

Do not adhere the speed restriction sticker to the padded area on the steering wheel. Adhering the speed restriction sticker to the padded area on the steering wheel is dangerous because the air bag may not operate (deploy) normally resulting in serious injury. In addition, do not adhere the sticker to areas where warning lights or the speedometer cannot be viewed.

Note:

Only use original sealant cartridges, which can be purchased at your authorized dealer.

Checking And Restoring Tire Pressure

The compressor can also be used to check and, if necessary, restore the tire pressure.

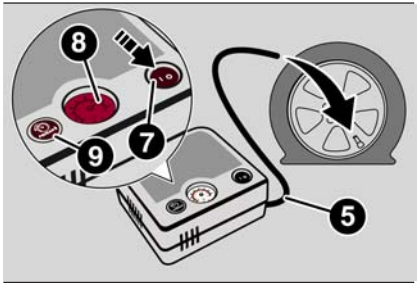
Proceed as follows:

1. Make sure that power switch is in the 0 (off) position.

2. Connect the hose directly to the valve on the tire to be inflated.

3. Insert the plug into the socket in the passenger compartment or in the cargo area and start the engine.

4. Start the compressor by putting the power switch to I (on). As soon as the correct pressure is reached, put the power switch to 0 (off).



Air Compressor And Components

5 — Hose
7 — Power Switch
8 — Pressure Gauge
9 — PSI/BAR Button

If the tire is over inflated, reduce the pressure by pushing the PSI/BAR button and releasing it when the correct pressure is reached.

JUMP STARTING

If your vehicle has a discharged battery, it can be jump started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle, or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump starting can be dangerous if done improperly, so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

Note:

When using a portable battery booster pack, follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

Warning!

Failure to follow this jump-starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

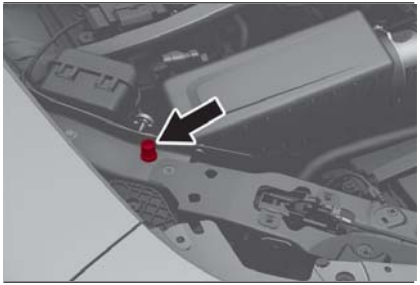
Caution!

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

Remote Battery Connection Posts

The remote posts of the battery for jump starting can be found inside the engine compartment. The battery itself is located in the luggage compartment.

The negative terminal (-) is positioned next to the passenger side hood lock.

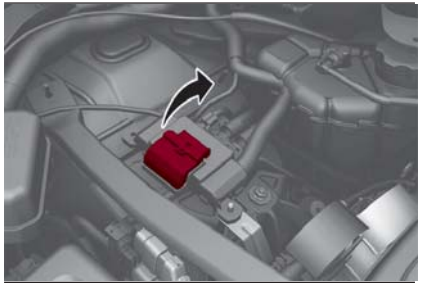


Remote Negative Post Location

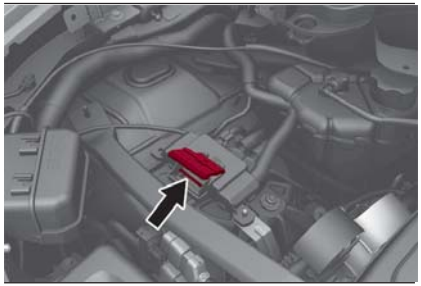
Warning!

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in serious injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

The positive post (+) can be accessed by removing the cover, and opening the protective flap.



Protective Flap



Remote Positive Post Location

To carry out the operation, you need to have the correct cables to connect to the battery of another vehicle or a portable battery booster pack to the remote posts of the discharged battery. Usually, these cables have terminals at the ends and are identified by different sheath colors (red = positive, black = negative).

Jump Starting Procedure

Warning!

Failure to follow this jump-starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

Caution!

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

Preparation For Jump Starting:

1. Firmly apply the electric park brake. Place the gear selector to PARK, then cycle the ignition to STOP mode.

2. Turn off all electrical features in the vehicle.

3. If using another vehicle to jump start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, apply the electric park brake and make sure the ignition is in STOP mode.

Warning!

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

Cable Connection

Proceed as follows to perform a jump starting procedure:

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.

3. Connect the negative end (-) of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.

4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery (exposed metal part of the engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

Warning!

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in serious injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery. If using a portable battery booster pack, before starting the vehicle, wait a few seconds after completing the connection.

Cable Disconnection

Once the engine is started, remove the connection cables in reverse sequence, as described below:

1. Disconnect the negative (-) jumper cable from the engine (-) ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

2. Disconnect the negative end (-) of the jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.

3. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.

4. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump-starting is required to start your vehicle, you should have the battery and charging system inspected at your authorized dealer.

Caution!

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service.

Caution!

❒ *The vehicle should be transported with all four wheels OFF the ground on the flatbed of a roadside assistance vehicle. Avoid towing with only the front (or rear) wheels lifted. When towing with only the front (or rear) wheels lifted, in addition to damaging the body, it could damage the transmission.*

❒ *Do not use sling-type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.*

❒ *When securing the vehicle to a flatbed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.*

❒ *Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remain released, while being towed.*

❒ *Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.*

Note:

If your vehicle is equipped with a Anti-Lift Protection system, you will need to disable the system prior to towing by pushing the button located on the overhead console. Refer to "Anti-Lift Protection — If Equipped" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.

The operators of the assistance vehicle must be informed with regard to the vehicle's minimum height from ground in order to avoid contact between the ends of the bumpers with the equipment of the breakdown truck.

The following image illustrates the front and rear attachment corners of the vehicle, to be taken into consideration when loading the vehicle on the commercial towing vehicle.

Front And Rear Loading Angles

	AWD Models
A	21.7°
B	18.3°

Four-Wheel Drive (AWD) Models

It is recommended to tow the vehicle with all four wheels OFF the ground on the flatbed of a commercial towing vehicle.

Caution!

❒ *DO NOT flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.*

❒ *DO NOT dolly tow this vehicle. Use of a towing dolly can cause significant damage to your vehicle.*

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

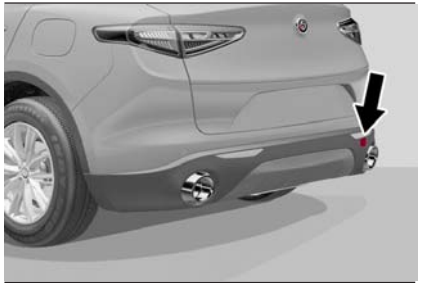
TOW EYES

If the vehicle has been in an accident or has broken down, a tow eye is provided in the tools container located inside the luggage compartment for vehicle towing. Towing is meant only for short distances on a paved road surface.

Proceed as follows to use the tow eye:

1. Unhook the cap on the front grille or rear bumper (if equipped), pushing on the upper part.

Front Tow Eye Cap



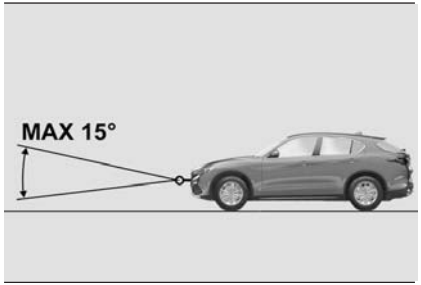
Rear Tow Eye Cap

2. Remove the tow eye from its housing in the luggage compartment and carefully clean the threaded housing on the vehicle before using it.

3. Tighten the vehicle's tow eye in place (about 11 turns).

Note:

The largest work angle of a tow cable to fix on the tow eye must not exceed 15°.



Work Angle Of Tow Cable

Warning!

Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow eyes.

❒ *Do not use a chain with a tow eye. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.*

❒ *Do not use a tow strap with a tow eye. Tow straps may break or become disengaged, causing serious injury or death.*

❒ *Failure to follow proper tow eye usage may cause components to break resulting in serious injury or death.*

Caution!

❒ *The tow eye must be used exclusively for roadside assistance operations. Only use the tow eye with an appropriate device in accordance with the highway code (a rigid bar or rope) to flat tow the vehicle for a short distance to the nearest service location.*

❒ *Tow eyes MUST NOT be used to tow vehicles off the road or where there are obstacles.*

❒ *In compliance with the above conditions, towing with a tow eye must take place with two vehicles (one towing, the other towed) aligned as much as possible along the same center line. Damage to your vehicle may occur if these guidelines are not followed.*

❒ *When towing, only use a facility that can tow vehicles with low ground clearances as extensive damage can result by using a standard tow truck platform.*

ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)

This vehicle is equipped with an Enhanced Accident Response System.

Please refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information on the Enhanced Accident Response System (EARS) function.

EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed under certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

Please refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information on the Event Data Recorder (EDR).

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

Correct servicing permits the performance of the vehicle to be maintained over time, as well as limited running costs and safeguarding the efficiency of the safety systems.

This chapter explains how.

SCHEDULED SERVICING 172
ENGINE COMPARTMENT 177
BATTERY RECHARGING 180
DEALER SERVICE 181
RAISING THE VEHICLE 182
TIRES 183
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES .199
STORING THE VEHICLE 200
BODYWORK 201

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct servicing is crucial for guaranteeing a long life for the vehicle under the best conditions.

For this reason, Alfa Romeo has planned a series of checks and services for your vehicle at fixed intervals based on distance and time, as described in the Scheduled Servicing Plan.

Before each service, it is always necessary to carefully follow the instructions in the Scheduled Servicing Plan (e.g. periodically check level of fluids, tire pressure, etc.).

Scheduled Servicing is offered by an authorized dealer according to a set time schedule. If, during each operation, in addition to the ones scheduled, the need arises for further replacements or repairs, these may be carried out with the owner's explicit consent only.

Note:

Scheduled Servicing intervals are required by the manufacturer. Failure to have them carried out may invalidate the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

You are advised to inform your authorized dealer of any small operating irregularities without waiting for the next service.

Periodic Checks

Every month or every **600** miles (**1,000** km) or before long trips check and, if necessary, top off:

- ❒ Engine coolant level.
- ❒ Brake fluid level (if insufficient, see your authorized dealer as soon as possible).
- ❒ Windshield washer fluid level.
- ❒ Tire inflation pressure and condition.
- ❒ Operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, etc.).
- ❒ Operation of windshield washing/wiping system and positioning/wear of wiper blades.

Every **2,000** miles (**3,000** km), check and top off if required:

- ❒ Engine oil level.

Heavy Usage Of The Vehicle

If the vehicle is used under one of the following conditions:

- ❒ Dusty roads.
- ❒ Short, repeated journeys less than 4 miles (7-8 km) at sub-zero outside temperatures.
- ❒ Engine often idling or driving long distances at low speeds or long periods of inactivity.
- ❒ In the event of a long period of inactivity.

The following checks must be carried out more often than indicated in the Scheduled Servicing Plan:

- ❒ Check cleanliness of hood and liftgate locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage.
- ❒ Visually inspect conditions of: engine, transmission, pipes and hoses (exhaust/fuel system/brakes) and rubber elements (sleeves/bushes, etc.).
- ❒ Check battery charge and battery fluid level (electrolyte).
- ❒ Visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belts.
- ❒ Check and, if necessary, change engine oil and replace oil filter.
- ❒ Check and, if necessary, replace cabin air filter.
- ❒ Check and, if necessary, replace air cleaner.

Severe Duty All Models

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off-road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

Maintenance Plan (2.0 T4 MAir Engine)

Thousands of miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Thousands of kilometers	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Check battery charge status with the proper instrument	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check tire condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary. Check the tire service kit recharge condition and expire date	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, deck lid, passenger compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check engine control system operation (via diagnostic tool) and, if equipped, engine oil degradation (2)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes), rubber elements (sleeves, bushes, etc.)		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	
Check position/wear of front windshield wiper blade	●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●

(1) Top up using the fluids indicated in the "Fluids And Lubricants" section of the "Technical Specifications" chapter only after checking that the system is intact.

(2) If oil degradation ratio (data collectable from diagnostic device) is more than 80% (oil quality less than 20%) engine oil and filter replacement is recommended.

Thousands of miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Thousands of kilometers	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Check operation of the windshield wiper/washer system and adjust nozzles, if necessary	•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•
Check cleanliness of hood and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage		•		•		•		•		•		•		•	
Visually inspect conditions and wear of front/rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)	•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•
Change engine coolant															•
Change engine oil and replace oil filter	(3)														
Replace transfer case oil (AWD models only)								•							
Replace accessory drive belt/s	(4)														
Replace air cleaner cartridge (5)			•			•			•			•			•
Replace the additional fuel filter (if equipped)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

(3) The actual interval for changing engine oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signaled by the warning light or message in the instrument panel. In all cases, never exceed 1 year/10,000 miles (16,000 km).

(4) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 36,000 miles (60,000 km). Regardless of the mileage, the belt must be replaced every 4 years. Dusty areas and/or demanding use of the vehicle (cold climates, town use, long periods of idling): advised maximum mileage 18,000 miles (30,000 km). Regardless of the mileage, the belt must be replaced every 2 years.

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 10,000 miles (16,000 km).

Thousands of miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Thousands of kilometers	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Change the brake fluid	(6)														
Replace the passenger compartment cleaner (5)	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●	o
Spark plug replacement *			●			●			●			●			●

(6) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.
(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 10,000 miles (16,000 km).
*The spark plug change interval is mileage-based only. Yearly intervals do not apply.
(o) Recommended operations
(●) Mandatory operations

Warning!

❒ *You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.*

❒ *Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.*

Checking Levels

Version - 2.0 T4 MAir engine,

1 – Engine Oil Filler Cap
2 – Engine Coolant Reservoir Cap
3 – Brake Fluid Reservoir Access Cover
4 –Windshield/Headlights Washer Fluid Reservoir Cap
5 – Intercooler Coolant Reservoir Cap

Engine Oil

The engine oil level can be seen on the instrument cluster display every time the engine is started, or on the Information and Entertainment system display by activating on the main menu (MENU button) the following functions in sequence: "Apps"; "My Car" and "Oil Level".

Check on the display using the 6 notches that the oil level is between the MIN and MAX level: 1 notch MIN level, 6 notches MAX level.

If the oil level is close to or below the MIN mark, add oil gradually through the filler, (refer to "Top-up and oil level indication update on display" in this section) considering that each notch shown on the display corresponds to approximately 8.8 fl oz (250 ml).

Caution!

Make sure not to add too much oil when topping off the engine. Engine oil in excess may damage the engine. Have the vehicle checked. Never exceed the MAX level when topping off engine oil.

Caution!

The oil level is not refreshed immediately on the display after topping off. Consequently, wait for the oil level to be refreshed on the display and follow the procedure below.

Note:

Always reinstall the oil cap and tighten to proper torque whenever it is removed to add oil to engine. Never run the engine with cap removed this could cause oil to leak from engine.

Top-Up And Oil Level Indication Update On Display

If a engine oil top-off is needed, in order to ensure the correct indication of the oil level on the display, leave the vehicle on flat ground with the engine running for approximately 5 minutes (temperature higher than 176°F (80°C)) and shut the engine off. Then, start the engine again, and idle it for about five minutes.

Note:

If you have added the specified amount of oil and the indicator is not reading "Full", please contact you authorized dealer.

Warning!

If the engine oil is being topped up, wait for the engine to cool down before loosening the filler cap, particularly for vehicles with aluminium cap (if equipped). WARNING: risk of burns!

Caution!

❒ *The oil level must never exceed the MAX mark.*

❒ *If the MAX mark is exceeded MAX (last notch on the right turns red) after the fill-up, go to your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the oil in excess removed.*

❒ *Do not add oil with specifications different from those of the oil already in the engine.*

❒ *Used engine oil and oil filters contain substances which are harmful to the environment. To change the oil and filters, we advise you to contact your authorized dealer.*

Engine Coolant Fluid

If the level is too low, unscrew the cap of the reservoir and add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

Washer Fluid For Windshield/ Headlights

The windshield and headlights washer fluid reservoir (if equipped) has a telescopic filler.

If the level is too low, remove reservoir cap and lift the filler. Then, add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

Note:

The headlight washing system will not work if the liquid level is low (situation indicated by the symbol on the instrument cluster display). The windshield washer will keep working.

Brake Fluid

Check that the fluid is at the maximum level. If the fluid level in the tank is low, contact your authorized dealer to have the system checked.

Automatic Transmission Activation System Oil

The transmission control oil level should only be checked at your authorized dealer.

Useful Advice For Extending The Life Of Your Battery

To avoid draining your battery and make it last longer, observe the following instructions:

❒ When you park the vehicle, ensure that the doors and liftgate are closed properly to prevent any lights from remaining on inside the passenger's compartment.

❒ Do not keep accessories (e.g. radio, hazard warning lights, etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running.

❒ Before performing any operation on the electrical system, disconnect the negative battery cable.

If you wish to install electrical accessories after purchasing the vehicle that require permanent electrical supply (e.g. alarm, etc.), or accessories which influence the electrical supply requirements, contact your authorized dealer, whose qualified staff will evaluate the overall electrical consumption.

Caution!

If the charge level remains under 50% for a long time, the battery may be damaged by sulphation, reducing its capacity and efficiency at start the vehicle. The battery is also more prone to the risk of freezing (at temperatures as high as 14°F (-10°C).

Note:

After the battery is disconnected, the steering must be initialized. The warning light on the instrument panel switches on to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other, and then turn it back to the central position.

Battery

The battery does not require the electrolyte to be topped up with distilled water. A periodic check carried out at an authorized dealer, however, is necessary to check efficiency.

Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

BATTERY RECHARGING

Important Notes

Warning!

❒ *Never charge or recharge a frozen battery: it may explode because of the nitrogen trapped inside the ice crystals.*

❒ *At all times while charging or recharging the battery, make sure that any sparks or open flames are kept sufficiently far away from the battery.*

Note:

❒ Before using the charging device, always make sure that it is appropriate for the installed battery, with constant voltage (below 14.8 V) and low amperage (maximum 15 A).

❒ Recharge the battery in a well ventilated environment.

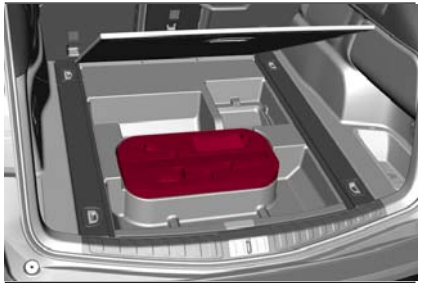
❒ Before using any devices to charge or to maintain the charge of the battery, carefully follow the instructions provided with the device in order to properly and safely connect it to the vehicle battery.

You can recharge the battery without disconnecting the wires of the vehicle's electrical system.

❒ To reach the battery, remove the load platform inside the liftgate.

Load Platform

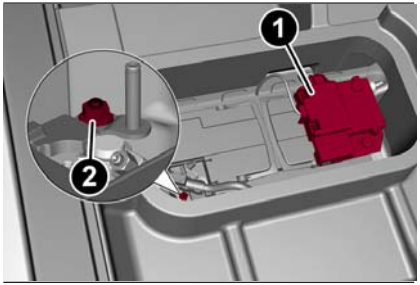
❒ Locate the battery access panel under the load platform.



Battery Access Panel

❒ Remove the protective cover and connect the positive cable terminal of the charger (usually red) to the positive terminal (+) of the battery.

❒ Connect the negative terminal of the charger (usually black) to nut next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery.



Battery

1 — Protective Cover
2 — Negative Post (Nut)

The vehicle is equipped with an IBS (Intelligent Battery Sensor), which is able to measure the charge and discharge voltage and calculate the charge level and the general condition of the battery. The sensor is placed next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery.

For a correct charge/discharge procedure, the charge voltage must go through the IBS sensor.

1. Turn the charger on and follow the instructions on the user's manual to completely recharge the battery.

2. When the battery is charged, turn the charger off before disconnecting it from the battery.

3. Disconnect the black cable terminal of the battery charger and then the red cable terminal.

4. Refit the protective cover of the positive terminal of the battery and the access cover to the battery compartment.

Note:

If a "quick-type" battery charger is used with the battery fitted on the vehicle, before connecting it disconnect both cables of the battery itself. Do not use a "quick-type" battery charger to provide the starting voltage.

DEALER SERVICE

The following pages contain instructions on the required maintenance from the technical personnel who designed the vehicle.

In addition to these specific maintenance instructions specified for routine scheduled servicing, there are other components which may require periodic maintenance or replacement over the vehicle's life cycle.

Air Conditioning System Maintenance

To ensure the best possible performance, the air conditioning system must be checked and undergo maintenance at an authorized dealer at the beginning of the summer.

Windshield Wiper

Raising The Windshield Wiper Blades ("Service Position" Function)

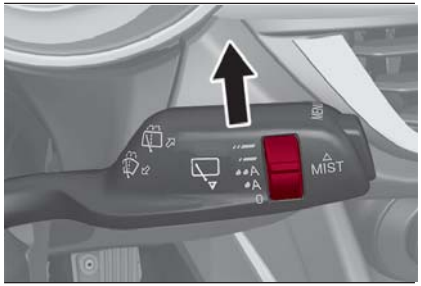
The "service position" function allows the driver to replace the windshield wiper blades more easily. It is also recommended to activate this function when it is snowing and to make it easier to remove any dirt deposits in the area where the blades are normally positioned, when washing.

Activation Of The Function

To activate this function disable the windshield wiper before cycling the ignition to STOP.

This function can only be activated within two minutes of cycling the ignition to STOP.

To activate this function, move the lever upwards for at least three seconds.



Windshield Wiper Stalk

Function Deactivation

The function is deactivated if:

❒ More than two minutes passes before cycling the ignition to the STOP position after having raised the lever and putting the wipers into service position.

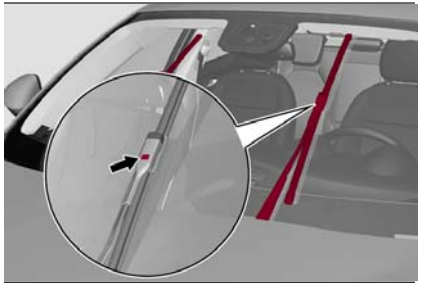
❒ The ignition is cycled to the ON and the windshield wiper control is used.

If, after using the function, the ignition is set back to ON with the blades in a position other than rest position (at the base of the windshield), they will only return to rest position following a command given using the stalk (stalk upwards, into unstable position) or when a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded.

Replacing The Windshield Wiper Blades

Proceed as follows:

1. Raise the wiper arm, push tab of the attachment spring and remove the blade from the arm.



Wiper Release Tab

2. Fit the new blade, inserting the tab in the dedicated housing in the arm and checking that it is locked.

3. Lower the wiper arm onto the windshield.

Note:

Do not operate the windshield wiper with the blades lifted from the windshield.

Front/Rear Windshield Washers

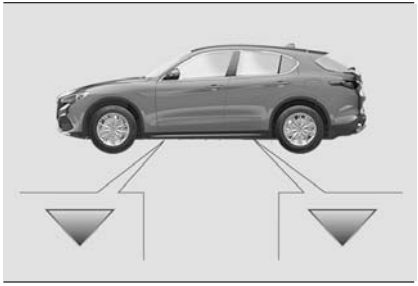
The window washer nozzles are fixed, and are located on the front windshield wiper arms, the rear windshield wiper arm, and the rear spoiler. If there is no jet of fluid, first check that there is fluid in the reservoir (see paragraph "Engine Compartment" in this chapter).

Then check that the nozzle holes are not clogged; use a needle to unblock them if necessary.

RAISING THE VEHICLE

If the vehicle requires lifting, visit an authorized dealer which is equipped with shop jacks or jack arms.

The vehicle lifting points are marked on the side skirts with the ▽ symbols.



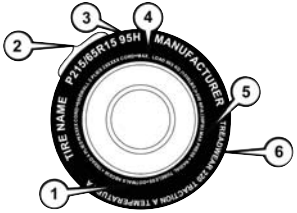
Vehicle Lift Point Locations

TIRES

Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information: Tire Markings, Tire Identification Numbers, Tire Terminology and Definitions, Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading.

Tire Markings



Tire Markings

1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)	4 — Maximum Load
2 — Size Designation	5 — Maximum Pressure
3 — Service Description	6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

Note:

❒ P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.

❒ European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter "P" is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.

❒ LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters "LT" that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.

❒ Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter "T" or "S" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

❒ High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

Tire Sizing Chart

EXAMPLE:
Example Size Designation: P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT
P = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or **"....blank...."** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or **LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or **T or S** = Temporary spare tire or **31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)
215, 235, 145 = Section width in millimeters (mm)
65, 85, 80 = Aspect ratio in percent (%) ❒ Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or **10.5** = Section width in inches (in)
R = Construction code ❒ "R" means radial construction, or ❒ "D" means diagonal or bias construction
15, 16, 18 = Rim diameter in inches (in)

EXAMPLE:
Service Description:
95 = Load Index ❒ A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry
H = Speed Symbol ❒ A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions ❒ The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)
Load Identification: Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire: ❒ **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or ❒ **LL** = Light load tire or ❒ **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure
Maximum Load – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry
Maximum Pressure – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

EXAMPLE:
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation ❒ This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size (two digits)
ABCD = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) ❒ 03 means the 3rd week
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) ❒ 01 means the year 2001 ❒ Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

Tire Terminology And Definitions

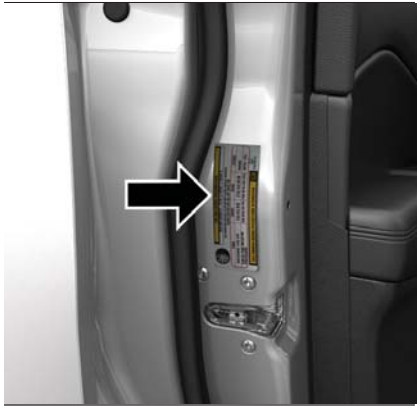
Term	Definition
B-Pillar	The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals).
Maximum Inflation Pressure	The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.
Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure	Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
Tire Placard	A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.

Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

Note:

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

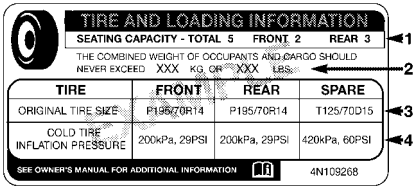
Check the inflation pressure of each tire, including the spare tire (if equipped), at least monthly and inflate to the recommended pressure for your vehicle.



Example Tire Placard Location (Door)

Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

Tire And Loading Information Placard



Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

Note:

Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants,

cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5x150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Metric Example For Load Limit

For example, if "XXX" amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (635-340 (5x68) = 295 kg) as shown in step 4.

Note:

❒ If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

❒ For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

Occupants			Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard	MINUS	Combined Occupant's weight	=	AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
TOTAL	FRONT	REAR					
EXAMPLE 1							
5	2	3	865 lbs	minus	Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 130 lbs Occupant 3: 160 lbs Occupant 4: 100 lbs Occupant 5: 80 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs 670 lbs	=	195 lbs
EXAMPLE 2							
3	2	1	865 lbs	minus	Occupant 1: 210 lbs Occupant 2: 180 lbs Occupant 3: 150 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs 540 lbs	=	325 lbs
EXAMPLE 3							
2	2	0	865 lbs	minus	Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 200 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs 400 lbs	=	465 lbs

EXAMPLE

811a4d11

Warning!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

Tires — General Information

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

❒ Safety and Vehicle Stability

❒ Economy

❒ Tread Wear

❒ Ride Comfort

Safety

Warning!

❒ *Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.*

❒ *Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.*

❒ *Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.*

❒ *Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.*

❒ *Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.*

❒ *Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.*

❒ *Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.*

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

Note:

❒ Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.

❒ Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

Fuel Economy

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

Tread Wear

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

❒ Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.

❒ Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

Caution!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum

inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to your authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

Warning!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressures

For vehicle speeds below 100 mph (160 km/h), recommended cold tire inflation pressures are listed on the Tire And Loading Information Placard located on driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

When driving at speeds 100 mph (160 km/h) and above, increased tire pressures and reduced vehicle loading are required for high-speed vehicle operation.

For driving speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) recommended cold tire inflation pressures are listed below under "High Speed Tire Inflation Pressure". Vehicle loading condition must not exceed 688 lbs. (312 kg) (driver + three passengers + 88 lbs. (40kg) luggage).

Warning!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision.

	Tires	Wheel	Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure		High Speed Tire Inflation Pressure	
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear
Original Equipment	235/60 R18 103V or 103W	18x8J	30 psi 2.1 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	38 psi 2.6 kPa
	235/55 R19 101V or 105V	19x8J	30 psi 2.1 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	38 psi 2.6 kPa
	255/45 R20 101H	20x8.5J	33 psi 2.3 kPa	36 psi 2.5 kPa	35 psi 2.4 kPa	39 psi 2.7 kPa
Snow Tires	235/60 R18 103V	18x8J	30 psi 2.1 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	38 psi 2.6 kPa
	235/55 R19 101V	19x8J	30 psi 2.1 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	33 psi 2.3 kPa	38 psi 2.6 kPa
	255/45 R20 101V	20X8.5J	33 psi 2.3 kPa	36 psi 2.5 kPa	35 psi 2.4 kPa	39 psi 2.7 kPa

Note:

Using tires of a different size, type, brand or design on the front and rear may adversely affect vehicle driveability. We recommend using only tires approved by the manufacturer. The manufacturer cannot determine if unapproved tires are suitable for use and therefore cannot guarantee vehicle safety in those conditions.

Radial Ply Tires

Warning!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

❒ The tire has not been driven on when flat.

❒ The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).

❒ The puncture is no greater than a ¼ of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

Run Flat Tires — If Equipped

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

Tire Spinning

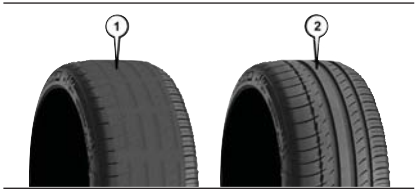
When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

Warning!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



Tire Tread

1 — Worn Tire
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to "Replacement Tires" in this section for further information.

Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

❒ Driving style.

❒ Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

❒ Distance driven.

❒ Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle scheduled maintenance is highly recommended.

Warning!

Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicators" in this section. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall.

See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the "Tire Safety Information" section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact your authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

Warning!

❒ Do not use a tire, wheel size, load rating, or speed rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.

❒ Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.

❒ Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

Caution!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

Spare Tires — If Equipped

Note:

For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to "Tire Service Kit" in "In Case Of Emergency" for further information.

Caution!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter "T" or "S" preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

Warning!

Compact and collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

Full Size Spare — If Equipped

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

Limited Use Spare — If Equipped

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

Warning!

Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limited use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

Caution!

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. Many aftermarket wheel cleaners and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels.

Caution!

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

Note:

If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle and apply the brakes to remove the water droplets from the brake components. This activity will remove the red rust on the brake rotors and prevent vehicle vibration when braking.

Dark Vapor Chrome, Black Satin Chrome, or Low Gloss Clear Coat Wheels

Caution!

If your vehicle is equipped with these specialty wheels, DO NOT USE wheel cleaners, abrasives, or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. HAND WASH ONLY USING MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH. Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

Tire Types

All Season Tires — If Equipped

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Warning!

Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.

Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a "mountain/snowflake" symbol on the tire sidewall.

If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires;

therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

Snow Chains

It is possible to fit 13 mm chains on all the tires except for R20.

Use of traction devices require sufficient tire-to-body clearance. Follow these recommendations to guard against damage.

Note:

❒ Traction device must be of proper size for the tire, as recommended by the traction device manufacturer.

❒ Use on Rear Tires Only.

❒ Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven.

❒ Using snow chains with tires with non-original dimensions may damage the vehicle.

❒ Using different tires sizes or types (M+S, snow, etc.) between the front and rear axles may adversely affect vehicle driveability, with the risk of losing control of the vehicle and resulting accidents.

Caution!

To avoid damage to your vehicle or tires, observe the following precautions:

❒ *Because of restricted traction device clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only traction devices in good condition are used. Broken devices can cause serious damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could indicate device breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the device before further use.*

❒ *Install device as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about ½ mile (0.8 km).*

❒ *Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).*

❒ *Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.*

❒ *Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.*

❒ *Observe the traction device manufacturer's instructions on the method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for use. Always use the suggested operating speed of the device manufacturer's if it is less than 30 mph (48 km/h).*

❒ *Do not use traction devices on a compact spare tire.*

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service

practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

Warning!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

STORING THE VEHICLE

If the vehicle is left inactive for longer than a month, the following precautions should be observed:

❒ Park the vehicle in an area that is covered and dry, and well-ventilated if possible. Slightly open the windows.

❒ Check that the electric park brake is not activated.

❒ Carry out the "manual liftgate opening device" procedure described in this paragraph.

❒ Disconnect the negative battery terminal and check the battery charge. Repeat this check once every three months during storage.

❒ If the battery is not disconnected from the electrical system, check its state of charge every thirty days.

❒ Clean and protect the painted parts using protective wax.

❒ Clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially.

❒ Sprinkle talcum powder on the windshield wiper rubber blades, and lift them off the glass.

❒ Cover the vehicle with a fabric or perforated plastic sheet, paying particular care not to damage the painted surface by dragging any dust that may have accumulated on it. Do not use compact plastic sheets, as they do not

allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the vehicle.

❒ Inflate tires to +7.25 psi (+0.5 bar) above the standard prescribed pressure and check it periodically.

❒ Do not drain the engine cooling system.

❒ Any time the vehicle is left inactive for two weeks or more, operate the air conditioning system with engine idling for at least five minutes, setting external air and with fan set to maximum speed. This operation will ensure appropriate lubrication for the system, thus minimizing the possibility of damage to the compressor when the system is operated again.

Note:

After cycling the ignition to STOP and having closed the driver side door, wait at least one minute before disconnecting the electrical supply from the battery. When reconnecting the electrical supply to the battery, make sure that the ignition is in the STOP position and the driver's side door is closed.

BODYWORK

Preserving The Bodywork

Paint

Touch up abrasions and scratches immediately to prevent the formation of rust.

Some parts of the vehicle may be covered with a matte paint which, in order to be maintained intact, requires special care: see the instructions in the warning at the end of this paragraph.

To correctly wash the vehicle, follow these instructions:

❒ If high pressure jets or cleaners are used to wash the vehicle, keep a distance of at least 15 inches (40 cm) from the bodywork to avoid damage or alteration. Build up of water could cause damage to the vehicle in the long term.

❒ It is advisable to position the wipers vertically (Service Position) to facilitate the removal of deposits of dirt from the area where the blades normally rest; for more information see "Dealer Service" in this chapter.

If washing the vehicle in a service that moves the vehicle, proceed with the following directions:

❒ Ensure that the vehicle is on a flat surface

❒ Disable the automatic engagement of the parking brake (refer to the "Electric Park Brake" in "Starting And Operating" for further information).

❒ With the vehicle stationary, the gear in NEUTRAL (N) and the brake pedal depressed, push the START button.

Note:

The vehicle will remain in NEUTRAL (N) for 15 minutes before PARK (P) will be engaged automatically.

PARK (P) mode should not be activated when entering a car wash which moves the vehicle. Once correctly lined up in the car wash, with the vehicle stopped and the transmission in NEUTRAL (N), push the START button for at least three seconds to turn off the engine.

This page is intentionally left blank

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

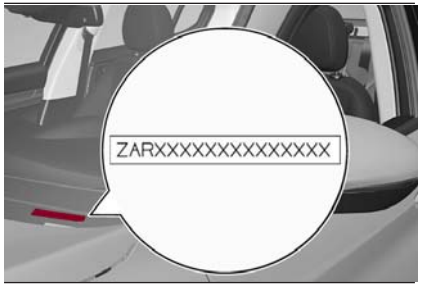
Everything you may find useful for understanding how your vehicle is made and works is contained in this chapter and illustrated with data, tables and graphics. For the enthusiasts and the technician, but also just for those who want to know every detail of their vehicle.

IDENTIFICATION DATA 204
ENGINE 205
TRANSMISSION 206
BRAKES 207
SUSPENSION 208
STEERING 209
DIMENSIONS. 210
WEIGHTS 211
FUEL REQUIREMENTS 212
FLUID CAPACITIES 213
FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS 214
PERFORMANCE 216

IDENTIFICATION DATA

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate on the front left corner of the dashboard trim, which can be seen from outside the vehicle, through the windshield.



Vehicle Identification Number

This number is also stamped on the chassis near the front left shock absorber and can be seen by opening the engine compartment hood.

Vehicle Identification Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) Plate

The plates are located on the left side A pillar and contain the data about:

- ❒ Chassis number (VIN).
- ❒ Vehicle type (USA and Canada only).
- ❒ Color code.
- ❒ Place of manufacturing of the vehicle (USA and Mexico only).
- ❒ Vehicle manufacturing date.
- ❒ Maximum permitted weights.
- ❒ Permitted tire inflation pressure (USA and Canada only).

2.0 T4 MAir engine	280 HP
Cycle	Four
Number and position of cylinders	4 in line
Piston bore and stroke (mm)	84 / 90
Total displacement (cm³)	1995
Compression ratio	10:1
Maximum power (SAE) (HP)	280
Maximum power (kW)	209
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	5200
Maximum torque (SAE) (ft-lb)	306
Maximum torque (Nm)	415
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	3300 - 4400
Fuel	87 Octane Minimum, 91 Recommended, ethanol percentage is 0–15%.

TRANSMISSION

Version	Transmission	Traction
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Eight forward gears plus reverse	All-Wheel Drive

BRAKES

Version	Front brakes	Rear brakes	Parking brake
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Disc	Disc	Electric

Caution!

❒ *Water, ice and salt spread on the roads may deposit on the brake discs, reducing braking efficiency the first time the brakes are applied.*

❒ *To obtain the maximum efficiency of the braking system, a bedding-in period of about 300 miles (500 km) is needed: during this period it is better to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged braking.*

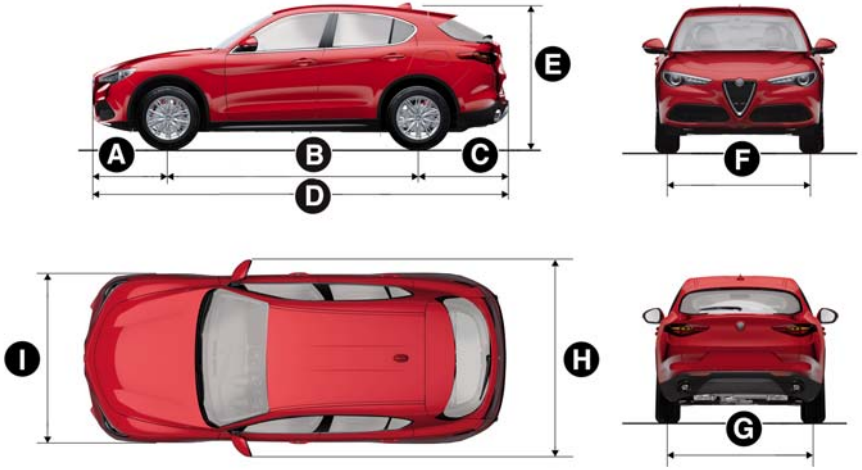
SUSPENSION

Version	Front	Rear
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Independent wheel double-wishbone suspension	Independent wheel with multilink system

Version	Curb-to-curb turning circle	Type
2.0 T4 MAir engine	38.55 ft (11.75 m)	Rack and pinion with electric power steering

DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are expressed in inches and refer to the vehicle equipped with its standard-supplied tires. Height is measured with vehicle unladen.



A Front Overhang	B Wheelbase	C Rear Overhang	D Overall Length	E Overall Height	F Front Track	G Rear Track	H Overall Width (Incl Mirrors)	I Overall Width (Excl Mirrors)
33.9 inches (862 mm)	111 inches (2818 mm)	39.7 inches (1008 mm)	184.6 inches (4688 mm)	66 inches (1677 mm)	63.5 inches (1612 mm)	65 inches (1650 mm)	85.2 inches (2163 mm)	74.9 inches (1903 mm)

Small variations with respect to the reported values are possible depending on the dimensions of the rims.

Weights (lbs)	2.0 T4 MAir engine
Unladen weight (with all fluids, fuel tank filled to 90% and without optional equipment)	3992
Payload including the driver (*)	992
Maximum permitted loads (**)	242
– Front axle	2491
– Rear axle	2976
– Total	5247
Towable loads	-
– Braked trailer	3000 lbs (1360 kg)
– Unbraked trailer	1000 lbs (454 kg)
Maximum load on roof	165 lbs (75 kg)
Maximum load on tow hitch (braked trailer)	300 lbs (136 kg)

(*) If special equipment is fitted (trailer towing equipment, etc.) the empty weight will increase and consequently the payload will decrease in relation to the maximum permitted loads.

(**) Loads not to be exceeded. The user is responsible for arranging goods in the luggage compartment and/or on the load platform within the maximum permitted loads.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

This engine is designed to meet all emission regulations, and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high-quality unleaded "Regular" gasoline having a posted octane number of 87 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method. For optimal performance the use of 91 or higher octane "Premium" gasoline is recommended in these engines.

While operating on gasoline with the required octane number, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your authorized dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with a lower than recommended octane number can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Materials Added To Fuel

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline

Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of Top Tier Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

2.0 T4 MAir Engine		
	U.S.	Metric
Fuel tank	16.9 Gallons	64 Liters
Fuel tank reserve	2.5 Gallons	9.6 Liters
Engine cooling system	2.3 Gallons	8.8 Liters
Intercooler cooling system	1.4 Gallons	5.25 Liters
Engine sump and filter	5.5 Quarts	5.2 Liters
Hydraulic brake circuit	0.9 Quarts	0.9 Liters
Windshield washer fluid reservoir	1.1 Gallons	4.1 Liters
Automatic transmission, 2.0 T4 MAir engine	9.8 Quarts	9.3 Liters
RDU 230-LSD differential	0.9 Quarts	0.9 Liters
RDU 210-eLSD differential (if equipped)	1.4 Quarts	1.3 Liters
RDU 210/215-LSD differential	1.1 Quarts	1.1 Liters
AWD System FAD transfer case	0.5 Quarts	0.5 Liters
AWD System TRANSFER CASE	0.7 Quarts	0.7 Liters

FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil that has been thoroughly developed and tested in order to meet the requirements of the Scheduled Servicing Plan. Constant use of the prescribed lubricants guarantees the fuel consumption and emission specifications. Lubricant quality is crucial for engine operation and duration.

Engine Lubrication

Engine	Features	Specification	Replacement interval
2.0 T4 MAir	**SAE 0W-30** API SN	MS-13340 9.55535-GS1	According To Maintenance Plan

If lubricants conforming to the requested specification are not available, products that meets indicated features can be used to top up; in this case optimal performance of the engine is not guaranteed.

Chassis Lubrication

Use	Features	Specification	Applications
Lubricants and greases	ZF 8HP 50 – Synthetic ATF	–	Automatic transmission
	SAE 75W-85 synthetic lubricant	FPW9.55550–DA9	Differential RDU 195; RDU 230-LSD; RDU 210-eLSD; RDU 210/215-LSD / 2.0 T4 MAir engine
	SAE 75W-80 APL GL-5 synthetic lubricant	FPW9.55550–DA10	AWD System FAD transfer case
	SAE 75W synthetic lubricant	FPW9.55550–DA11	AWD System transfer case
Brake fluid	DOT 4	MS.90039	Hydraulic brakes
Engine coolant	CUNA NC956–16 ASTMD3306	MS.90032	Use rate 50% Not mixable with different formulation products. (*)
Windshield washer fluid	CUNA NC 956-11	MS.90043	To be used diluted or undiluted in windshield washer/wiper systems.
HVAC	R1234yf	–	–

(*) For particularly harsh climate conditions, a mixture of 60% product and 40% distilled water is recommended.

Caution!

The use of products with different specifications than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine that is not covered by the warranty.

PERFORMANCE

Top performance after the initial period of vehicle usage.

Engine	Top speed mph / (km/h)	Acceleration from 0-60 mph / (0-100 km/h) sec.
2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP AWD engine	144 / (232)	5.4

MULTIMEDIA

This chapter describes the main functions of the Information and Entertainment system 6.5", Information and Entertainment System NAV 6.5", and the Information and Entertainment Sysytem 3D NAV 8.8" system that can be equipped in your vehicle.

CYBERSECURITY 218
ROAD SAFETY 219
RECEPTION CONDITIONS 219
CARE AND MAINTENANCE 219
ANTITHEFT PROTECTION 220
IMPORTANT NOTES. 220
CONTROLS 221
CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL .226
INTRODUCTION 228
RADIO MODE 228
MEDIA MODE 229
BLUETOOTH SOURCE 229
USB/iPod/AUX SUPPORT 230
PHONE MODE 230
NAVIGATION MODE — IF EQUIPPED 231
SETTINGS. 232
APPS. 234
VOICE COMMANDS. 234

CYBERSECURITY

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time, and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems, or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software is installed.

Warning!

❒ *It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.*

❒ *ONLY insert media (e.g., USB or SD card) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.*

❒ *As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.*

Note:

❒ FCA US LLC or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.

❒ To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:

– Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones or USBs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent.

ROAD SAFETY

Learn how to use the various systems and read the instructions carefully before operating the system.

Warning!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the features and applications in this vehicle. Only use these features and applications when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

RECEPTION CONDITIONS

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. There may be reception interference when near mountains, tall buildings, or bridges, especially when you are far away from the broadcaster.

Note:

The volume may change when receiving traffic information and news.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

Observe the following precautions to ensure the system is fully operational:

❒ The display screen should not come into contact with pointed or rigid objects which could damage its surface; use a soft, dry, anti-static cloth to clean and do not press down on the system's screen.

❒ Never use alcohol, gasoline, or derivatives to clean the display lens.

❒ Prevent any liquid from entering the system, as it could damage the system beyond repair.

Caution!

❒ *Only clean the front panel and the display with a soft, clean, dry, anti-static cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface. Do not use alcohol or similar products to clean the panel or the display.*

❒ *Do not use the display as a base for supports with suction pads or adhesives for external navigators or smartphones or similar devices.*

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION

The system is equipped with an antitheft protection system based on the exchange of information with the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle.

This guarantees maximum safety and prevents the system from being used on other vehicles if it is stolen. If necessary contact an authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT NOTES

Only look at the screen when it is necessary and safe to do so. If you need to look at the screen for a long time, pull over to a safe place to avoid becoming distracted while driving.

Immediately stop using the system in the event of a fault, or you could damage the system. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the system repaired.

CONTROLS ON CONSOLE

Controls

1 — ON/OFF Control And Volume Knob
2 — OPTION Button
3 — Rotary Pad
4 — MENU Button

CONTROL SUMMARY TABLE

ON/OFF Control And Volume Knob

Action	Function
LONG PRESS	Turns the Information and Entertainment System on and off.
ROTATION	Rotate clockwise to increase the volume. Rotate counterclockwise to decrease the volume.
SHORT PRESS	Turns the system on, if it is off. In Radio mode: Activates/deactivates the Mute function. In Media mode: Activates play/pause and activates/deactivates the Mute function.

Action	Function
MOVE TO THE SIDE	In Radio mode: ❒ Move to the right to seek to the next radio station. ❒ Move to the left to seek to the previous radio station. In Media mode: ❒ Move to the right to seek to the next track. ❒ Move to the left to seek to the previous track.

OPTION Button

Pushing the "OPTION" button while within the modes “RADIO”, “MEDIA”, “PHONE”, or “NAVIGATION” will open the "Settings" screen of that particular mode. Press it again to go back to the previously selected mode.

Rotary Pad

Action	Function
ROTATION	Within the Menus: scrolls the menu items. Within Point On Map, in Navigation mode (if equipped): Rotate clockwise to zoom in on the map. Rotate counterclockwise to zoom out on the map.
PUSH	Within the Menus: confirms the selection.
BRIEF MOVEMENT TO THE RIGHT	Within the Menus: accesses the submenu of the selected function. Within Point On Map, in Navigation mode (if equipped): moves to the right on the map.
BRIEF MOVEMENT TO THE LEFT	Within the Menus: returns to the previous menu; ESC function. Within Point On Map, in Navigation mode (if equipped): moves to the left on the map.
BRIEF UPWARD MOVEMENT	Within the Menus: enters the Multitasking menu and closes the preselection bar if open. Within Point On Map, in Navigation mode (if equipped): moves upwards on the map.

Action	Function
BRIEF DOWNWARD MOVEMENT	Activates the radio preselection. Within the Menus: enters the preselection bar and closes the Multitasking menu if open. Within Point On Map, in Navigation mode (if equipped): moves downwards on the map.

Touchpad Controls — If Equipped

The top of the Rotary Knob is a touchpad device, and can be used to operate some of the controls.

Touchpad Controls

Function	Action	Where
	Scroll up	
Open And Close Multitasking Menu		Anywhere (except where specified)

Function	Action	Where
Open And Close the Preset Bar	Scroll down	Anywhere (except where specified)
Enter Letters, Symbols, And Numbers	Writing	Data input screens
Zoom	Movement to open and close	Point On Map
Drag	Scroll	Point On Map

MENU button

Opens the main menu.

Menu Button

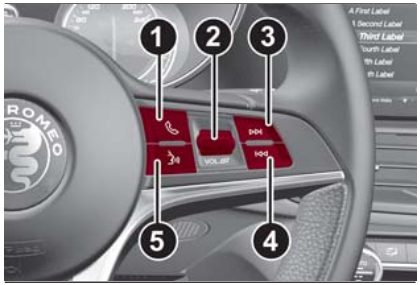
4 — Menu Button

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL

DESCRIPTION

The controls for the main system functions are present on the steering wheel to make control easier.

The function selected is controlled, in some cases, by the length of the push (short or long push). The function is described in the table below.



Steering Wheel Controls

1 — Phone Button
2 — Volume Control
3 — Forward Seek Button
4 — Back Seek Button
5 — Voice Command Button

STEERING WHEEL CONTROL SUMMARY TABLE

Forward Seek Button⏭

Action	Function
SHORT PRESS	In Radio mode: selects the next radio station. In Media mode: selects the next track.
LONG PRESS	In Radio mode: scan higher frequencies until released. In Media mode: fast forward the track.

Back Seek Button⏮

Action	Function
SHORT PRESS	In Radio mode: selects the previous radio station. In Media mode: selects the previous track.
LONG PRESS	In Radio mode: scan lower frequencies until released. In Media mode: fast rewind.

Voice Command Button

Action	Function
SHORT PRESS	Activate voice commands.
LONG PRESS	Immediately closes Voice Recognition.

Phone Button

Answers/ends call or shows the recent calls list.

Volume Control

Action	Function
ROTATION	Upwards: increases volume. Downwards: decreases volume.
SHORT PRESS	In Radio mode: activates/deactivates the Mute function. In Media mode: activates play/pause and activates/deactivates the Mute function.

INTRODUCTION

The system can be managed using the Rotary Pad.

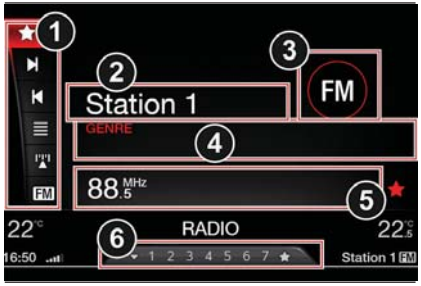
❒ Turn it to navigate the menus.

❒ Push it to activate/confirm the selections.

❒ Move it leftwards to go back to the previous screen.

RADIO MODE

After the desired radio station is selected, the following information is shown on the display.



Radio Mode

1 — Control bar

❒ Favorites

❒ Next

❒ Previous

❒ Stations List

❒ Search

❒ Band

2 — Name of the radio station being played and the favorite symbol if the station is stored in the list

3 — Logo of the active frequency band

4 — Transmitted program type

5 — Current station frequency

6 — Preset number (if the current station is stored)

MEDIA MODE

Note:

Applications used on portable devices may be not compatible with the Information and Entertainment System.

Track Selection (Browse)

With Media mode active, briefly press the Seek buttons to play the previous/next track or keep the Seek buttons pressed to fast rewind/forward the track.

Media Mode

BLUETOOTH SOURCE

Pairing A Bluetooth Audio Device

Proceed as follows:

❒ Activate the Bluetooth function on the device.

❒ Press the MENU button, and select the "SETTINGS" function by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

❒ Select "Infotainment".

❒ Select "Bluetooth".

❒ Select "Add device".

❒ Search for the Information and Entertainment system on the Bluetooth audio device (during the pairing stage a screen is displayed showing the progress of the operation).

❒ Select the device to be paired.

❒ When requested by the audio device, enter the PIN code shown on the system display or confirm on the device the PIN displayed.

❒ If the pairing procedure is completed successfully, a dedicated screen is displayed.

❒ The "Bluetooth" can be reached also by pressing the OPTION button in the PHONE or MEDIA functions. The MEDIA function can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad in the main menu (MENU button).

Note:

If the Bluetooth connection between mobile phone and system is lost, consult the mobile phone handbook.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle: This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

USB/iPod/AUX SUPPORT

There might be up to three USB ports: one under the Climate Controls on the Instrument Panel, one in the center console, and one (charge only) under the air vents on the back side of the center console. The AUX socket is located inside the center console.

PHONE MODE

Phone mode can be activated from the main menu (MENU button) by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

Phone Mode

The following control bar appears on the display:
- ❒ Dial
- ❒ Recent calls
- ❒ Favorites
- ❒ Contacts
- ❒ Text messages
- ❒ End call

With a call in progress, the control changes to:
- ❒ Dial
- ❒ Recent calls
- ❒ Transfer to device
- ❒ Contacts
- ❒ Mute
- ❒ End call

Note:

The mobile phone audio is transmitted through the vehicle's audio system. The system automatically mutes the system audio when the PHONE function is used.

Pairing A Mobile Phone

Proceed as follows:

❒ Activate the Bluetooth function on the device

❒ Press the MENU button, select the "SETTINGS" function by turning and pushing the Rotary Pad

❒ Select "Infotainment"

❒ Select Bluetooth

❒ Select "Add device"

❒ Search for the Information and Entertainment system on the Bluetooth audio device (during the pairing stage a screen is displayed showing the progress of the operation)

❒ When requested by the audio device, enter the PIN code shown on the system display or confirm on the device the PIN displayed

❒ When the pairing procedure is completed successfully, a dedicated screen is displayed

❒ The "Bluetooth" can be reached also by pressing the OPTION button in the PHONE or MEDIA functions. The latter can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad in the main menu (MENU button).

Making A Phone Call

Proceed as follows:

❒ Select the "Recent calls" icon

❒ Select the "Contacts" icon

❒ Select the "Dial" icon

NAVIGATION MODE — IF EQUIPPED

Note:

In the interest of safety and to reduce distractions while you are driving, you should always plan a route before you start driving.

Navigation Mode

To plan a route, do the following:

❒ Activate NAVIGATION mode by selecting it on the main menu.

❒ Activate the "Set destination" function.

To enter an address, select the item to add (Country, City). On the circular keypad, type the desired name, and the system automatically completes the word. The right of the display offers a list of options that apply to the entered letters. You can now either complete the word, or go to the list of suggestions by tapping the Rotary rightward, or by pointing to "OK", and pressing the Rotary Pad.

Or

❒ Select an address from the "Recent destinations" list.

Or

❒ Select an address from the "Favorite destinations" list.

❒ Once the desired destination has been set, select "Start navigation".

With navigation started, select one of the following options using the control bar on the display:

❒ Stop Navigation: this allows the user to stop navigation

❒ Navigation Volume Adjustment: this allows to set the volume of the messages

❒ Edit Route: lets you refine your route choice, offering a series of options

❒ Route Preview: this is used to see a preview of the planned route

❒ Zoom: this allows to zoom into/out of the map

❒ Point On Map: this allows to move inside the map

SETTINGS

To access the user-programmable functions, open the main menu by pressing the MENU button, then select SETTINGS by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

The following menu items can be found within SETTINGS:

- ❒ Lights
- ❒ Units & Language
- ❒ Clock & Date
- ❒ Safety
- ❒ Driver Assistance
- ❒ Doors & Locks
- ❒ Cluster
- ❒ Infotainment
- ❒ System

Settings Menu

Lights

To access Lights settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ❒ Headlight Sensitivity
- ❒ Headlight Off Delay
- ❒ Cornering Lights
- ❒ Flash Lights with Lock
- ❒ Daytime Running Lights
- ❒ Greeting Lights
- ❒ Interior Ambient Lights
- ❒ Automatic High Beam
- ❒ Restore Settings

Units & Language

To access "Units & Language" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ❒ Units
- ❒ Language
- ❒ Restore Settings

Clock & Date

To access "Clock & Date" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ❒ Sync with GPS Time
- ❒ Set Time
- ❒ Time Format
- ❒ Set Date
- ❒ Restore Settings

Safety

To access “Safety” settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

❒ Speed Limiter

This feature activates/deactivates the warning that indicates you have exceeded the set speed.

❒ Speed Limiter - Set Speed

This feature sets the desired speed limit value. By turning the Rotary Pad, the speed increases by 5 mph (5 km/h), per rotation, from a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

❒ Forward Collision Warning — If Equipped

This feature sets the type and sensitivity of the assistance features for the anti-collision system. The options available are:

- – "Mode": used to set the following operating modes: Warning and Brake, Only Warning, or Disabled
- – "Sensitivity": used to select desired distance of the obstacle (near, medium, or far) that the assistance features activate at.

❒ Lane Departure Warning

This feature is used to select the

"readiness" of the Lane Departure system to activate. The option available is:

- "Sensitivity": used to select the timing (early, or late) for when the assistance features activate.

❒ Blind Spot Monitoring

Used to activate/deactivate the sound warning that indicates that objects are detected in the blind spot of the exterior rear view mirrors.

Driver Assistance

To access "Driver assistance" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

❒ ParkSense

This feature is used to select the type of warning provided by the ParkSense system.

The options available are:

- "Mode": the following options are available in this function: "Sound", the system notifies the driver of the presence of an obstacle by means of sound. This sound warning can be heard from the speakers in the vehicle. "Sound and Display", the system notifies the driver of the presence of an obstacle by means of sound and visual signals on the instrument panel display.
- "Parksense Volume": sets the volume of the sound warnings provided by the ParkSense system, the available options are: "High, "Medium," or "Low".

❒ Rear View Camera — If Equipped

This function can be used to carry out the following adjustments:

- "View": lets you activate the video camera on the display.
- "Camera Delay": allows you to delay the camera from shutting off immediately when the vehicle is taken out of REVERSE.
- "Camera Guidelines": allows you to activate the dynamic guidelines that appear on the display to indicate the route of the vehicle.

❒ Automatic Parking Brake

This function allows you to activate/deactivate the automatic parking brake activation, when the engine is turned off.

❒ Brake Service — If Equipped

This function activates a vehicle mode that allows brake system servicing.

Doors & Locks

To access "Doors & Locks" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

❒ Door Lock in Motion
❒ Unlock All Doors on Exit
❒ Passive Entry
❒ Door Unlock on Entry
❒ Horn with Remote Start
❒ Sound Horn with Lock
❒ Restore Settings

Cluster

To access "Cluster" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

❒ Warning Buzzer Volume
❒ Trip B
❒ Phone Repeat
❒ Restore Settings

Infotainment

To access "Infotainment" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ❒ Screen Off
- ❒ Splitscreen
- ❒ Audio
- ❒ Bluetooth
- ❒ Radio
- ❒ Media
- ❒ Phone
- ❒ Navigation (if equipped)
- ❒ Apps

System

To access "System" settings, select it using the Rotary Pad. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ❒ Auto-On Radio
- ❒ Switch-Off Delay
- ❒ Software Update
- ❒ Map Update
- ❒ Clear Personal Data
- ❒ Restore Settings

APPS

Radio Application Mode can be activated from the main menu (MENU button) by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

Application Mode

The following information appears on the display:

- ❒ "My Car": lets you see a series of information linked to the vehicle status.
- ❒ "Efficient Drive": lets you see some driving style parameters.
- ❒ "User's Manual": lets you view and read the vehicle's user manual.

VOICE COMMANDS

Note:

Voice commands are not available for languages not supported by the system.

To use the voice commands, press the button on the steering wheel and say one of the commands below for the function you want to activate.

The available voice commands are listed below:

Radio Functions

The button can be used to activate the following functions:

- ❒ Tune In Station Xxx
- ❒ Tune In Frequency Xxx
- ❒ Add To Favorites
- ❒ Show Available Stations
- ❒ Show Favorite Stations
- ❒ FM
- ❒ AM
- ❒ SiriusXM

Media Functions

The button can be used to activate the following functions:

- Display Album
- Play Album
- Display Artist
- Play Artist
- Display Composer
- Play Composer
- Display Genre
- Play Genre
- Display Playlist
- Play Playlist
- Play Song
- Play All
- Display All The Albums
- Display All The Artists
- Display All The Composers
- Display All The Genres
- Display All The Playlists
- View All Songs
- Activate Shuffle
- Deactivate Shuffle
- Pass To Aux
- Pass To USB 1
- Pass To USB 2
- Pass To Bluetooth

Phone Functions

The button can be used to activate the following functions:

- Dial <XXX>
- Call <XXX>
- Redial
- Show Contacts
- Show All Calls
- Show Missed Calls
- Search

Navigation Functions — If Equipped

The button can be used to activate the following functions:

- Navigate To <XXXX>
- Favorite
- Set 2D Map
- Set Detailed 3D Map
- Set Overhead View
- Route Preview
- Start Navigation
- Interrupt Navigation
- Repeat Instructions
- Show Map
- Find The Nearest <Point Of Interest>

This page is intentionally left blank

CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE 238
IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE 238
WARRANTY INFORMATION 239
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . .240
PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS 240

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you are having warranty work done, be sure to bring the right papers with you, as well as your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history, as this can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

❒ If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.

❒ If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

❒ Owner's name and address

❒ Owner's telephone number (home and office)

❒ Authorized dealer name

❒ Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

❒ Vehicle delivery date and mileage

Alfa Romeo Customer Center

P.O. Box 21–8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004

Phone: 1-844-Alfa-USA
(1-844-253-2872)

Alfa Romeo Customer Center (Canada)

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: 1-800-465-2001 (English)
Phone: 1-800-387-9983 (French)

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

Warning!

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION

See the Warranty Information Booklet, for the terms and provisions of FCA US LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying FCA US LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer or FCA US LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); or go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/.

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted.

Service Manuals

These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing FCA US LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests, and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

User Guide

These User Guides have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific FCA US LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- ❒ **1-800-890-4038 (U.S.)**
- ❒ **1-800-387-1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- ❒ www.techauthority.com

INDEX

Active Safety Systems 72
Adaptive Cruise Control. 128
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Cruise Control) 128
Additives, Fuel 212
Air Bag 93
  Advance Front Air Bag 93
  Air Bag Operation 95
  Air Bag Warning Light 93
  Driver Knee Air Bag 96
  Enhanced Accident Response . . .170
  Event Data Recorder (EDR) 170
  Front Air Bag 93
  If A Deployment Occurs 98
  Knee Impact Bolsters 95
  Maintaining Your Air Bag System. .101
  Redundant Air Bag Warning Light . .93
  Side Air Bags 96
  Transporting Pets 112
Air Bag Light 93,113
Air Bag Maintenance. 101
Air Pressure, Tires 191
Alarm (Security Alarm) 12
Alfa Active Suspension (AAS) 124
Alfa DNA System. 123
Anti-Lock Braking (ABS) System 72
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 213
Assistance Towing 146
Automatic Dimming Mirror. 25
Automatic Headlights 27
Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) 31
Automatic Transmission 120
Auxiliary Driving Systems 76

B-Pillar Location 188
Battery. 179
Battery Recharging 180
Belts, Seat. 113
Blind Spot Monitoring. 76
Bluetooth Mode 229
Bodywork (Cleaning And Maintenance) 201
Brakes 207
  Brake Fluid Level 179
Bulbs, Light 114

Camera, Rear 138
Capacities, Fluid 213
Carbon Monoxide Warning 112
Changing A Flat Tire 182
Chart, Tire Sizing 184
Checking Levels 177
Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . .112
Checks, Safety 112
Child Restraint 101
Child Restraints
  Booster Seats 104
  Child Restraints 101
  Child Seat Installation 110
  How To Stow An Unused ALR Seat Belt 108
  Infants And Child Restraints 103
  LATCH Positions 105
  Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children 105
  Older Children And Child Restraints 103
  Seating Positions 104
Cleaning
  Wheels 197
Climate Control. 31
Close The Hood. 36
Compact Spare Tire 196
Contract, Service. 239
Controls 221
  Controls On Console 221
  Summary Table 221,226
Controls On Steering Wheel 226
Cooling System
  Coolant Capacity 213
  Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) .213
Cruise Control (Speed Control) 128
Customer Assistance 238

Daytime Running Lights 27
Daytime Running Lights (DRL) 27
Defroster, Windshield 113
Dimensions 210
Direction Indicators (Changing A Bulb). 150
Disabled Vehicle Towing. 146,167
Door Locks
Child-Protection Door Lock — Rear Doors 16
Power Door Locks 16
Doors. 13
Drive Train Control (DTC) System 72
Driving Modes 123
Dynamic Steering Torque (DST) System 74

Electric Park Brake. 117
Electric Remote Mirrors 25
Electric Steering Wheel Heating. 24
Electronic Speed Control 126
Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control). 126,128
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) System 73
Emergency, In Case Of. 161
Hazard Warning Flasher 146
Jacking 182
Jump Starting 165
Towing 146,167,169
Engine 205
Engine Coolant Level 179
Exhaust Gas Caution 112
Fuel Requirements 212
Jump Starting 165
Oil 213
Oil Selection 213
Engine Compartment 177
Engine Oil
Level Check 178
Enhanced Accident Response Feature 170
Exhaust Gas Caution. 112
Exhaust System 112
Exterior Lighting 26,28
Exterior Lights 26,114

Flashers
Hazard Warning 146
Turn Signal 29,114
Fluid Capacities. 213
Fluid Leaks 114
Fluids And Lubricants 214
Fog Lights (Changing A Bulb) 151
Forward Collision Warning (System) 79
Front Light Cluster With Halogen Headlights (Bulb Replacement). . .150
Front Light Cluster With Main Beam Xenon Gas Discharge Headlights (Bulb Replacement). . .151
Front Seat Electric Heating 19
Front Seats (Power Adjustment) 18
Front Wipers
Wiper Operation 30
Fuel
Additives 212
Materials Added 212
Tank Capacity 213
Fuse Boxes 152
Fuses (Replacement) 151

Garage Door Opener (HomeLink) 39
General Information 78,135

Hazard Warning Flasher. 146
Hazard Warning Lights
Emergency Braking. 147
Head Restraints 21
Head Rests 21
Headlights
Switch 26,28
High Beam Headlights. 28
Automatic High Beam Headlights . .28
Hill Decent Control (HDC) System. . . .75

Hill Start Assist (HSA) System. 74
Hood 36
Hood Release 36

Identification Data 204
Ignition. 11
Instrument Cluster. 46
Instrument Cluster Display
Instrument Cluster Display 47
Reconfigurable Instrument Cluster Display 48
Instrument Panel Features
Instrument Panel Features 46
Interior Lights. 29
Internal Equipment 39

Jack Operation 182
Jump Starting 165,166

Key Fob
Remote Keyless Entry 10
Key, Replacement 10
Keyless Enter-N-Go
Passive Entry 14

Lane Change 29
Lane Change And Turn Signals 29
Lane Departure Warning System . . .140
LaneSense. 140
Lap/Shoulder Belts 88
Latches. 114
Leaks, Fluid 114
Life Of Tires 194
Liftgate 37
Lifting The Vehicle 182
Light Bulbs. 114
Types Of Bulbs 148
Light Switch. 26
Lights. 114
Air Bag 93,113
Automatic Headlights 27
Courtesy/Reading 29
Daytime Running 27
Exterior 114
Hazard Warning Flasher 146
Headlight Switch 26,28
Headlights 26,28
High Beam 28
Instrument Cluster 26,28
Map Reading 29
Park 27
Reading 29
Turn Signal 29,114
Loading Vehicle
Tires 188
Locks
Power Door 13

Main Beam Headlights (Changing A Bulb). 150
Manual, Service. 240
Mirrors. 25
Automatic Dimming 25
Electric Powered 25
Electric Remote 25

OBD System 69
Occupant Restraints. 86
Oil, Engine
Capacity 213
Recommendation 213
Viscosity 213
Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . .240

Paintwork (Cleaning And Maintenance) 201
Panic Brake Assist (PBA) System 74
Park Sensors System 135
Performance (Top Speed). 216
Pets. 112
Placard, Tire And Loading Information 188

Power
Door Locks 13
Mirrors 25
Seats 18
Sunroof 34
Power Sunroof 34
Pregnant Women And Seat Belts 91
Pretensioners
Seat Belts 91
Prolonged Vehicle Inactivity 200

Radial Ply Tires 193
Radio 228
Radio Frequency
General Information 10,12,16
Rain Sensor 30
Rear Camera 138
Rear Cross Path 76
Rear Seats. 20
Rear Window Wiper/Washer 30
Refueling Procedure 141
Refueling The Vehicle 141
Reminder, Seat Belt 87
Replacement Keys 10
Replacement Tires 195
Replacing A Bulb 147
Replacing An External Bulb 150
Reporting Safety Defects 240
Restraint, Head. 21
Restraints, Child 101
Rims And Tires 183

Safety Checks Inside Vehicle. 113
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle. 114
Safety Defects, Reporting 240
Safety Information, Tire. 183
Safety Tips 112
Safety, Exhaust Gas 112
Scheduled Servicing 172
Scheduled Servicing Program
(2.0 T4 MAir Engine Versions) . . .174
Seat Belt
Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt
Anchorage 90
Energy Management Feature 91
Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting 90
Lap/Shoulder Belts 88
Pregnant Women 91
Seat Belt Pretensioner 91
Seat Belt Reminder 87
Seat Belt Reminder 87
Seat Belts 87,113
Adjustable Shoulder Belt 90
Adjustable Upper Shoulder
Anchorage 90
Child Restraint 101
Front Seat 87,88
Inspection 113
Pregnant Women 91
Pretensioners 91
Rear Seat 88
Untwisting Procedure 90
Seats 18
Head Restraints 21
Height Adjustment 18
Power 18
Tilting 18
Sentry Key Replacement 10
Service Assistance. 238
Service Contract 239
Service Manuals 240
Servicing Procedures 181
Shoulder Belts 88
Signals, Turn. 29,114
Snow Chains. 199
Snow Tires. 198
Spare Tire 196
Speed Control
Accel/Decel 127
Cancel 128
Resume 127
Set 127
Speed Control (Cruise Control) 128
Speed Limiter. 125
Starting The Engine 116
Steering 209
Tilt Column 23

Wheel, Heated 24
Wheel, Tilt 23
Steering Wheel 23
Stop/Start System. 124
Sun Roof 34
Supplemental Restraint System - Air Bag 93
Suspension 208
Symbols 4

Telescoping Steering Column 23
Tilt Steering Column. 23
Tire And Loading Information Placard 188
Tire Markings 183
Tire Safety Information 183
Tire Service Kit 161
Tires 114,191,196,199
Aging (Life Of Tires) 194
Air Pressure 191
Changing 182
Compact Spare 196
Flat Changing 161
General Information 191,196
High Speed 192
Inflation Pressures 191
Jacking 182
Life Of Tires 194
Load Capacity 188
Quality Grading 199
Radial 193
Replacement 195
Safety 183,191
Sizes 184
Snow Tires 198
Spare Tire 196
Spinning 194
Tread Wear Indicators 194
Towing 143
Disabled Vehicle 167
Towing Eyes 169
Towing The Vehicle 169
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System). 83
Traction Control System (TCS). 73
Trailer Towing 143
Trailer And Tongue Weight 143
Trailer Towing Guide 143
Trailer Weight 143
Transmission 206
Transporting Pets 112
Tread Wear Indicators 194
Turn Signals 29
Uniform Tire Quality Grades 199
Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt 90
Use Of The Owner's Manual 3

Vehicle Changes/Alterations 5
Vehicle Identification Number 204
Vehicle Loading 188

Warning Flasher, Hazard 146
Warranty Information 239
Washer Fluid For Windshield/Headlights. 179
Washers, Windshield. 30
Weights 211
Wheel And Wheel Trim. 197
Wheel And Wheel Trim Care 197
Wheels And Tires 183
Windshield Defroster 113
Windshield Wiper 30
Replacing Blades 182
Windshield Wiper/Washer Smart Washing Function 30
Windshield Wipers 30
Wrecker Towing. 167

This guide has been prepared to help you get quickly acquainted with your new Alfa Romeo and to provide a convenient reference source for common questions. However, it is not a substitute for your Owner's Manual.

For complete operational instructions, maintenance procedures and important safety messages, please consult your Owner's Manual, Information and Entertainment System Manual found on the website on the back cover and other Warning Labels in your vehicle.

Not all features shown in this guide may apply to your vehicle. For additional information on accessories to help personalize your vehicle, visit **alfaromeousa.com** or your local Alfa Romeo dealer.

DRIVING AND ALCOHOL

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

WARNING!

Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.

La meccanica delle emozioni

Get warranty and other information online – you can review and print or download a copy of documents for your vehicle provided by FCA US LLC by visiting these links. For Owner's Manual and Information and Entertainment System Manual, visit **alfaromeousa.com/owners/owners-service-manual**, and for the Limited Warranties, visit **alfaromeousa.com/owners/warranty**. Click on the applicable link and follow the instructions to select the applicable year, make and model for your vehicle.

Whether it's providing information about specific product features, taking a tour through your vehicle's heritage, knowing what steps to take following an accident, or scheduling your next appointment, we know you'll find the app an important extension of your Alfa Romeo vehicle. Simply download the app, select your make and model and enjoy the ride. To get this app, go directly to the App Store or Google Play and enter the search keyword "Alfa Romeo" (U.S. market only).

Download a FREE electronic copy of the most up-to-date documents by visiting these links:

Owner's Manual and Media:
www.alfaromeousa.com/owners/owners-service-manual (U.S. residents); **www.owners.mopar.ca** (Canadian residents).

Warranty Booklet:
www.alfaromeousa.com/owners/warranty (U.S. residents); **www.owners.mopar.ca** (Canadian residents).

18GU-926-AA
ALFA ROMEO STELVIO
First Edition Rev 1
User Guide

©2017 FCA US LLC. All Rights Reserved. ALFA ROMEO is a registered trademark of FCA Group Marketing S.p.A., used with permission.